THE ELEMENTS OF FRENCH

BECHT & BORDES

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY PUBLISHERS CHICAGO

FIRST COPY,
1898

2nd COPY DELIVERED TO THE
APR 25 1899
Library of Congress.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
1800

Class PC2111
Book .B59
Copyright No. copy 2

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

The Lake French Series
UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF
EDOUARD P. BAILLOT, NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY

ELEMENTS OF FRENCH

A PRACTICAL COURSE FOR HIGH SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY

ANDRÉ BÉZIAT DE BORDES

PROFESSOR OF MODERN LANGUAGES IN THE WESLEYAN COLLEGE OF MACON, GEORGIA; INSTRUCTOR IN THE ALLIANCE FRANÇAISE; FORMERLY PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE PENINSULAR COLLEGE OF GRACIA (BARCELONA), SPAIN

CHICAGO
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
1899

PC 2111
.B59
copy 2

Copyright, 1899,
By Scott, Foresman and Company.

TWO COPIES RECEIVED.

C. J. Peters & Son, Typographers,
Boston.

25523
Apr. 12. 99.

AUS MESTES DOU CASTET' DE BALANSÛ

Y

A LA MIE "DAUNE" AYMADE

QUE PRESENTI AQUESTE

PETIT LIBI.

PREFACE.

The great progress in the teaching of modern languages is due in part to the large and constantly increasing number of "methods of instruction" and grammars which have been published lately. Each of these has been a step forward, and it is earnestly hoped that, in justification of its appearance, the same may be said of the little book, which, written at first for his own students, the author ventures to submit to the kind attention and criticism of the public.

The title of the book will explain its aim, — which is, to present, in as simple a manner as possible, only the "elements of French." The difficulty has consisted in eliminating those facts, not essential, and those only; in avoiding the complexity of details, and the dryness of technicality; and, at the same time, in giving enough details and technicality, to enable the student to understand the mechanism of the language.

To simplicity had to be added that other requisite of every elementary book, variety, which is indispensable for holding the attention and interest of the student. If the author has been successful in this respect, he gladly acknowledges his indebtedness to the arrangement of lessons in Mr. Otis's "Elementary German," — if he has failed, it will be owing to his own shortcomings.

In the choice of proverbs and sayings, the preference has been given to those which can be assigned to a well-known authorship; while, in writing or selecting the reading

pieces, the author wished to teach the student, — besides mere words and sentences, — some essential facts of French literary or political history.

By a gradual presentation of the subject, as well as by a special arrangement of the table of irregular verbs, an effort has been made to simplify the study of the verb, — that most arduous part of French grammar. It will be found, perhaps, that something has been done to render less formidable that *bête noire* of the student of the French language.

It is with pleasure that the author makes acknowledgment of his indebtedness to the excellent works of Messrs. Whitney, Van Dael, de Rougemont, Berlitz, Larive et Fleury, Leclair, Larousse, Littré, Demogeot, and others, and especially to Mr. Otis's "Elementary German," — above mentioned, — all of which have been of valuable assistance in the preparation of these lessons.

Finally, he wishes to express his thanks to Professor Edouard P. Baillot, of the Northwestern University, for his editorial help and indulgence.

A. BÉZIAT DE BORDES.

CHICAGO, *April*, 1899.

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

1. Most of the chapters in Part I. are supposed to contain material for three fifty-minute recitations, although the size and nature of the class may at times allow a skillful teacher to cover the ground in two recitations.

2. Before a lesson is assigned, it should be carefully explained by the teacher, and a correct pronunciation of each word of the vocabulary and reading-exercises given so that the lesson may be studied intelligently, and a faulty pronunciation avoided.

3. The French-English exercises are intended to facilitate the student's understanding of spoken French. Let him, therefore, with closed book, listen attentively while the instructor reads each sentence, and, after repeating it with proper pronunciation until familiar, give its idiomatic translation.

4. The reading-exercises at the end of each chapter are intended to be memorized.

5. The teacher may, as early as practicable, dictate in English short letters composed only of such words as students have had, or may easily understand from the vocabulary at the end of the book. All constructions beyond those in the lessons already studied should be

avoided, and the tenses indicated, whenever they present any difficulty.

6. It is believed that a thorough review ought to be made after every five chapters, and in order to facilitate this work, review exercises have been placed after Chapters V., X., XV., and XX.

7. Part II. is designed for a reference book, to be used only in connection with other work of the class-room; for, after the elementary principles of a language have been learned, further rules are needed only to answer questions arising from the text or lesson in hand. The same observation may apply to the first chapter of Part I. (about pronunciation): it is to be used only as a reminder of the practical rules of pronunciation given by the teacher.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

PREFACE 3

SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS 5

PART I.

CHAPTER

I. ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION 9

II. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE 14

III. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES 19

IV. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE 25

V. VERBS 31

FIRST REVIEW LESSON 38

VI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 40

VII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS 46

VIII. PRONOUN "EN" 53

IX. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS 58

X. COMPOUND TENSES.—VERBS CONJUGATED WITH "AVOIR" 64

SECOND REVIEW LESSON 70

XI. RULES OF AGREEMENT OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE, 72

XII. VERBS CONJUGATED WITH "ÊTRE" 77

XIII. REFLEXIVE VERBS 83

XIV. PASSIVE VOICE OF VERBS 89

XV. THE VERB AFTER CONDITIONAL "SI," IF . . . 95

THIRD REVIEW LESSON 101

XVI. SUBJUNCTIVE 103

XVII. SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*) 109

XVIII. SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*) 114

XIX. GENERAL REMARKS UPON THE INFLECTION OF THE VERBS OF CONJUGATIONS I. AND II. . . 120

XX. IRREGULARITIES IN CONJUGATIONS III. AND IV. . 125

CHAPTER PAGE
Fourth Review Lesson 130
XXI. How to write a Letter 132
Irregular Verbs 139

Part II.

I. The Definite Article 147
II. The Noun 151
III. Adjectives 155
IV. Determinative Adjectives 160
V. Pronouns 163
VI. Verbs — Use of Tenses 172
VII. Verbs — (*Continued*) 177
VIII. Participles 184
IX. Prepositions 188
X. Adverbs — Conjunctions — Interjections . . 192
Vocabularies 197
Index 231

Elements of French.

CHAPTER I.

Alphabet and Pronunciation.

1.

a, ă.		**j**, zhee.		**s**, ĕs.	
b, bā.		**k**, kä.		**t**, tā.	
c, sā.		**l**, ĕl.		**u**, ü.	
d, dā.		**m**, ĕm.		**v**, vā.	
e, ā.		**n**, ĕn.		**w**, doobl′ vā.	
f, ĕf.		**o**, ō.		**x**, eeks.	
g, zhā.		**p**, pā.		**y**, eegrĕck.	
h, ăsh.		**q**, kü.		**z**, zĕd.	
i, ee.		**r**, ĕr (air).			

REMARKS ON THE ALPHABET.

2. THE VOWELS.

a is pronounced: (1) as in "father." Ex.: *âme;* (2) as in "cap," "flat." Ex.: *malade.*

e has three different sounds: (1) **e** (e *muet*, "silent e") is called silent, because it is pronounced very slightly, if at all, when at the end of a word or syllable. If pronounced, it has somewhat the sound of "u" in "shut." Ex.: *table, venir, revenir* (pronounced tabl′, v′neer, rŭv′neer).

(2) é (e *fermé*) has the sound of "a" in "fate" = ai. Ex.: *été* (pronounced ātā or aitai).

(3) è and ê (e *ouvert*) can have a short or a long sound. When short, it is identical with English "e" in "bed." When long, it has properly a somewhat more open sound, and more stress must be laid upon it, as in "where."

Ex.: (short) *collège, poète.*
(long) *bête, succès.*

i has the sound of English "i" in "machine," or that of "ee." Ex.: *ici, midi, divisé* (pronounced ees-see, meed-dee, deev-vee-zā).

o is short or long. Short "o" = "o" in the word "cord," or, perhaps, = "aw" in "shawl." Long "o" is as the English "o" in "note," but not with quite so much stress laid upon it.

Ex.: (short) *fort, homme, George.*
(long) *rose, chose, hôte.*

u. — There is no sound in English equivalent to that of the French "u." This corresponds exactly to the German "ü" (u with Umlaut). To pronounce "u," round the lips as when "oo" (boot) is uttered, and then pronounce "ē," or *vice versa.* The position of the lips is similar to that of whistling. Care must be taken not to give it the sound of "ē," although it is nearer this than the "oo" sound. It resembles vaguely the sound of the English "u" in "busy." Ex.: *rue, pû, vu, plus, nu, pur, minute.*

y has the same sound as "i," except when between two vowels, in which case it has the value of a double "i." Ex.: *syllabe, style, physique,* etc. (pronounced seel-lab', steel, phee-zeec); *envoyer, payer* (pronounced *an-voi-eeai, pai-eeai*).

3. DIPHTHONGS.

The **diphthongs,** with their approximate value, are:

ai, ei = é or è.
au, eau = ō or ŏ.
eu, œu = English "u" in "burn," and "fur," or German "ö."
ou = English "oo" in "mood."
oi = English "wa" in "wasp."

4. NASAL VOWELS.

When, *in the same syllable,* a vowel or diphthong is followed by the letters "m" or "n," these consonants are silent, but give a nasal sound to the preceding vowel or diphthong. For instance: *poulain, plein, foin, manger, ronger, à jeun* (pronounce the syllables and diphthongs with the same nasal sound as the English "aw" in the words "lawn-tennis," "pawn-shop"). But, if the consonant belongs to the following syllable, or precedes a vowel or silent "h," it preserves its initial sound.

5. (*a*) "u," in *un* or *um,* takes the sound of *eu.*
(*b*) "i," in *in* or *im,* is pronounced as *ai.*

6. CONSONANTS.

PRONOUNCE:

c, as in English (ç = ss). Ex.: *car, ça, ici* (pronounced kârr, ssâ, eessee).

ch, as "sh." Ex.: *chanter, chasse* (pronounced shanty', shass').

g, as in English, except before "e," "i," and "y," when it has the soft sound of the English "s" in the words "treasure," "pleasure." Ex.: *garçon, gauche, gelé, gigot* (pronounced gârsson', gohsh', zhelai', zheegoh').

gn, as "ni" in the English word "opinion." Ex.: *mignon, rognon, grognon* (pronounced minyon, ronyon, gronyon).

h, not at all. There are, however, two kinds of "h," called "mute or silent h" and "aspirate h" (*h muet* and *h aspiré*); but the latter differs from the former only in the fact that it is marked by a pause, a separation from the preceding letters. Ex.: *le héron, le héros, l'héroïne, l'héroïsme* (pronounced le | airon, le | airoh, lairoeen', lairoeezm').

j, as a soft "g" (= "s" in "pleasure"). Ex.: *jaloux, jeune* (pronounced zhaloo, zhŭn).

l, as in English, except when liquid; "l" is, in general, liquid when, in the same syllable, it is preceded by "i." Ex.: *pâle, mâle, gril, fille* (pronounced pâl', mâl, gry'e, fy'e).

r, rolled — much more distinct than in English. Ex.: *ravin, rôtir, renaître* (pronounced rravin, rrōteerr, rrenaitrr').

t, as in English, except in the endings "tial," "tiel," "tion," and some in "tie," when it is pronounced "ss." Ex.: *tenir, partial, partiel, constitution, démocratie* (pronounced t'neer, parssial, parssiĕl, constitussion, démocrassie).

s, as in English, except when between two vowels; it has, then, the sound of "z." Ex.: *sage, son, ses, si, peser, pause, oser, nosologie* (pronounced ssâge, sson, ssay, ssee, p'zai, pôz', ôzai, nôzôlôzhee).

x, as "ks" or "gz." Ex.: *fixe, luxe, annexer, annexion, exemple, exercice* (pronounced feeks, lüks, ânnĕksai, ânnĕksion, ĕgzâmpl', ĕgzĕrssees').

7. At the end of a word, consonants (c, f, l, and r being excepted) are generally silent.

8. *LIAISON.*

When a word, ending in a consonant, is followed by another word beginning with a vowel or silent "h," the final consonant of the first word is carried over to the second, and the two words are pronounced *as one.* Ex.: *mal élevé, mal habillé* (pronounced malail'vé, malabiyé).

9. DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

As a general rule, it must be remembered that a syllable, in French, begins with a consonant. Ex.: *inanité, inamovible, amabilité.* (Divide so: i-na-ni-té, i-na-mo-vi-ble, a-ma-bi-li-té.)

When a double consonant ("nn," for instance) is placed between two syllables, the first "n" belongs to the preceding, and the second to the following syllable.

10. ACCENT.

There is not, properly speaking, any accent, or stress of the voice, upon a given syllable of a word, in French. All sounding syllables are pronounced with equal force. However, when the last syllable of a word is silent, the penult must be slightly emphasized.

CHAPTER II.

The Definite Article.

11. Gender. — There are but two genders: masculine and feminine. French has no neuter. Hence all nouns are either masculine or feminine.

12. Article. — The definite article, "the," is *le*, masculine; *la*, feminine; *les*, for both genders in plural.

(*a*). *le* and *la*, preceding a vowel or silent *h*, become *l'* (*e* and *a* are elided, and replaced by an apostrophe).

(*b*). *le* and *les* preceded by the prepositions *de*, "of," and *à*, "to," are contracted respectively into *du*, *des*, "of the," and *au*, *aux*, "to the."

13. INFLECTION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc. and Fem.*
le,	**la,**	**les,** the.
du,	**de la,**	**des,** of the.
de l',	**de l',**	
au,	**à la,**	**aux,** to the
à l',	**à l',**	

14. VOCABULARY.[1]

Masculine.

le livre,	the book.	**le fils,**	the son.
le crayon,	the pencil.	**l'ami,**	the friend.
le cheval,	the horse.	**l'enfant,**	the child.
le pain,	the bread.	**l'homme,**	the man.
le jardin,	the garden.	**l'arbre,**	the tree.
le père,	the father.		

[1] In naming French nouns care should be taken always to prefix the article in the proper gender: as, *le livre*, *la craie*, *l'homme*, *l'eau*.

Feminine.

la maison, the house.
la craie, the chalk.
la ville, the city.
la femme, the woman, the wife.
la mère, the mother.
la fille, the daughter.
l'oreille, the ear.
l'eau, the water.
l'huile, the oil.

à, to.
et, and.
rouge, red.
jeune, young.
jaune, yellow.
grand, large, great, tall.
petit, small, short.
noir, black.
vert, green.
laid, homely.
gros, big.
bon, good.
blanc, white.
sage, well-behaved, wise.

15. EXERCISE.

1. The pencil and the chalk. 2. Of the tree. 3. To the garden. 4. The man's[1] ear. 5. Of the bread. 6. To the child. 7. The man's[1] wife, daughter, and friend. 8. The water of the city. 9. The tree of the garden. 10. The father's[1] friend. 11. The son's[1] book. 12. To the child's[1] father.

[1] To be translated by the "of the" case of the article, as there is no possessive case in French.

16. Adjectives. — Adjectives have a masculine and a feminine form, and like the article, agree in gender and number with the noun which they qualify, as: *le grand cheval, la grande maison.*

17. FORMATION OF THE FEMININE. — Adjectives ending in a silent *e* do not change for the feminine; those ending in a *consonant* add a silent *e*; those ending in a *c* change *c* into *che* (or *que*); those ending in *as, on, os,* double the final consonant, and add *e.*

Ex. :	*Masc.*	rouge	*Fem.*	rouge
	"	grand	"	grande
	"	blanc	"	blanche
	"	bon	"	bonne
	"	gros	"	grosse

18. INFLECTION OF THE PRESENT TENSE OF *ÊTRE*, "to be."

Je suis,	I am.	**nous sommes,**	we are.
tu es,	thou art.	**vous êtes,**	you are.
(**elle**) **il est,**	(she) he is.	(**elles**) **ils sont,**	they are.

19. EXERCISES.

1. L'homme et la femme. 2. Le jardin et la maison. 3. La mère et l'enfant. 4. L'ami du père. 5. Le jardin du fils. 6. La craie est blanche. 7. L'arbre est grand. 8. La fille est jeune. 9. La mère est bonne. 10. L'enfant est petit. 11. Le cheval est-il rouge ?[1] 12. Le pain est-il bon ?[1] 13. Tu es jeune. 14. Le petit arbre est vert. 15. Le crayon est jaune. 16. L'eau est-elle blanche ?[1]

[1] Notice the interrogative form of these sentences.

20. 1. The father and the mother. 2. The son and the daughter. 3. The man and the child. 4. The house of the son. 5. The wife of the man. 6. The man is the son of the friend. 7. The house is white. 8. The child is good. 9. The book is small. 10. The garden is green. 11. The daughter is young. 12. Is the house large ?[1] 13. Is the horse white ?[1] 14. Is the bread black ?[1] 15. Is the child small ?[1] 16. The city is small. 17. I am tall. 18. Thou art young.

[1] Literally : "The house is it large ?" "The horse is it white ?" "The bread is it black ?" etc.

---

21. VOCABULARY.

Parlez-vous ?	speak you, do you speak, are you speaking ?	**français,**	French.
		anglais,	English.

Je parle,	I speak, I do speak, I am speaking.	**espagnol,**	Spanish.
		allemand,	German.
Qui parle ?	who speaks ?	**italien,**	Italian.
Il parle,	he speaks.	**russe,**	Russian.
		danois,	Danish.
		suédois,	Swedish.

Le Français,	the Frenchman.	**oui,**	yes.
l'Anglais,	the Englishman.	**non,**	no.
l'Espagnol,	the Spaniard.	**ne . . . pas,**	not.
l'Allemand,	the German.	**rien,**	nothing.
l'Italien,	the Italian.		
le Russe,	the Russian.		
le Danois,	the Dane.		
le Suédois,	the Swede.		

22. In French *vous* is "you," whether one or more persons are addressed; and the verb is always in the plural. This is the general "you."

23. *Je parle* expresses alone the three English forms, "I speak," "I do speak," "I am speaking." So in the case of other tenses and verbs.

24. "Not" is rendered by two words, *ne . . . pas*. The verb is placed between them. Before a vowel *n'* is used instead of *ne*.

25. CONVERSATION. — Parlez-vous français ?

1. Parlez-vous français ?
2. Oui, je parle français.
3. Non, je *ne* parle *pas* français.
1. Parlez-vous anglais ?
2. Oui, je parle anglais.
1. Parlez-vous espagnol ?
2. Oui, je parle espagnol.
1. Parlez-vous allemand ?
2. Oui, je parle allemand.

1. Parlez-vous italien ?
2. Oui, je parle italien.
3. Non, je *ne* parle *pas* italien.
1. Qui parle français ?
2. Le Français parle français.
1. Qui parle anglais ?
2. L'Anglais parle anglais.
1. Qui parle espagnol ?
2. L'Espagnol parle espagnol.
1. Qui parle allemand ?
2. L'Allemand parle allemand.
1. Qui parle italien ?
2. L'Italien parle italien.

Etc.

26. READING.

PROVERBE.

Rien sans peine.
without effort

Rien n'est si dangereux qu'un ignorant ami :
so dangerous as an

Mieux vaudrait un sage ennemi.
better would be [worth] wise

LA FONTAINE.

CHAPTER III.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

27. The **demonstrative adjectives** are:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. ce (cet), *Fem.* cette,	this or that.	*Masc.* *Fem.*	ces, these or those.
Masc. ce ...-ci, cet ...-ci, *Fem.* cette...-ci,	this.	*Masc.* *Fem.*	ces ...-ci, these. ...-là, those.
Masc. ce ...-là, cet ...-là, *Fem.* cette...-là,	that.		

28. *Ce* precedes a consonant. Ex.: *ce chapeau.* *Cet* is used before a vowel or silent "h." Ex.: *cet ami, cet homme.*

29. The qualified noun is placed between the demonstrative adjectives and the adverbs *ci* "here," and *là* "there," when the distinction between a nearer and a farther object is to be made more emphatic. The noun is joined to these adverbs by a hyphen. Ex.: *ce chapeau-ci, cet homme-là,* etc.

30. The **demonstrative pronouns,**

celui-ci, celle-ci,	this one,	ceux-ci, celles-ci,	these,
celui-là, celle-là,	that one,	ceux-là, celles-là,	those,

can be used instead of the *adjectives,* to avoid a repetition of the noun; for instance, in an answer: *Quel est le chapeau bleu? c'est celui-ci* (instead of *c'est ce chapeau-ci*).

31. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le plancher,	the floor.	**les plancherS**,	the floors.
le plafond,	the ceiling.	**les plafondS**,	the ceilings.
le frère,	the brother.	**les frèreS**,	the brothers.
le fils,	the son.	**les filS**,	the sons.
l'écolier, / **l'élève**,	the scholar. / the pupil.	**les écolierS**, / **les élèveS**,	the scholars. / the pupils.
le chapeau,	the hat.	**les chapeauX**,	the hats.
le nez,	the nose.	**les neZ**,	the noses.

Feminine.

la sœur,	the sister.	**les sœurS**,	the sisters.
la fleur,	the flower.	**les fleurS**,	the flowers.
la croix,	the cross.	**les croiX**,	the crosses.
l'amie,	the (lady) friend.	**les amieS**,	the (lady) friends.

---

ici,	here.	**rond**,	round.
quel (*masc.*), / **quelle** (*fem.*),	which, / what.	**beau** (*masc.*), / **belle** (*fem.*),	handsome, / beautiful.
c'est,	it is.	**bleu**,	blue.

32. EXERCISE.

1. Do you speak French to that scholar? 2. This man is English, that one French. 3. That woman's brother is here. 4. This floor is large and that ceiling is small. 5. This hat is black, that one is green. 6. That red book is big, this one is not big, it is small. 7. That cross is white. 8. This flower and that one are beautiful.[1] 9. I do not speak [2] to that Englishman, I speak to the Frenchman, my father's [3] friend. 10. Who is that child's brother? 11. Who speaks to the Dane? 12. Which is the red book? It is this one.

[1] *Belles.* [2] Translate: I speak not. [3] Cf. note to §15; My = *mon.*

33. INFLECTION OF THE PRESENT TENSE OF *AVOIR*, "to have."

J'ai,	I have.	**nous avons,**	we have.
tu as,	thou hast.	**vous avez,**	you have.
(**elle**) **il a,**	(she) he has.	(**elles**) **ils ont,**	they have.

34. "SOME," in the English expressions "SOME paper," "SOME water," etc., is to be translated, in French, by *du* (or *de l'*, cf. § 12) for the masculine, *de la* (or *de l'*) for the feminine, and *des* for the plural of both genders. Ex.: *J'ai du papier, de la craie, de l'eau, des fleurs,* I have *some* paper, *some* chalk, *some* water, *some* flowers.

35. The plural of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding *s* to the singular: *Le livre, les livres; le plafond, les plafonds.* There are, however, many exceptions to this rule. Thus: nouns ending in *au* add *x* instead of *s*: *le chapeau, les chapeaux;* those ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* do not change: *le fils, les fils; la croix, les croix; le nez, les nez.*

36. EXERCISES.

1. Cet homme. 2. Cette fille. 3. Le fils de cet homme. 4. La fille de cette femme-là. 5. Le livre jaune de cet écolier. 6. Quelle est cette grande maison blanche? 7. Ce livre-ci est-il rouge? 8. Quel est le crayon jaune? 9. C'est celui-là. 10. La sœur de l'élève a des fleurs bleues. 11. Les élèves ont des crayons. 12. Quels sont les livres de la sœur de cet écolier? 13. L'ami de cet homme. 14. L'ami de la fille. 15. La sœur du frère. 16. As-tu du papier? 17. Elle a du papier.

37. 1. This daughter. 2. Of that man. 3. This man's son. 4. Some books. 5. That house is white. 6. This book is handsome. 7. This paper is red. 8. This man [here][1] is tall. 9. That hat [there] is white. 10. The

garden of that man. 11. Is that book small? 12. The daughter's friend. 13. This flower [here] is beautiful. 14. The hat is round and white. 15. [The] big noses are homely. 16. The father and the son have those beautiful gardens. 17. Have you some paper? 18. The paper of the book.

[1] Brackets enclose the literal phrasing of the French, or words not used in English, but required in French.

---

38. VOCABULARY.

Où parle-t-on? Where speaks one, where do they speak?
On parle, one speaks, they speak.
Comment parlez-vous? How speak you, how do you speak?

un peu, a little.		**la France**,[1]	France.
seulement, only.		**l'Espagne**,	Spain.
ne . . . pas couramment, not fluently.		**l'Angleterre**,	England.
		l'Allemagne,	Germany.
très, very.		**l'Italie**,	Italy.
très bien, very well.		**la Russie**,	Russia.
assez couramment, pretty fluently.		**le Danemark**,	Denmark.
		la Suède,	Sweden.
pas du tout, not at all.		**en**,	in.
jamais, never.		**en France**,	in France, etc.

[1] Notice the use of the definite article before the names of countries.

39. The indefinite *on* (German *man*) corresponds to the English "one," "they," "people," or to the passive form: e.g., *on parle*, "one speaks," "they speak," "people speak." *Ici on parle français*, "French is spoken here." (Cf. § 381 ff.)

40. CONVERSATION. — Parlez-vous français?

1. Où parle-t-on français?
2. On parle français en France.

1. Où parle-t-on espagnol ?
2. On parle espagnol en Espagne.
1. Où parle-t-on anglais ?
2. On parle anglais en Angleterre.
1. Où parle-t-on allemand ?
2. On parle allemand en Allemagne.
1. Où parle-t-on italien ?
2. On parle italien en Italie.
1. Où parle-t-on russe ?
2. On parle russe en Russie.
1. Où parle-t-on danois ?
2. On parle danois en Danemark.

Etc., etc.

1. Comment parlez-vous le[1] français ?
2. Je parle seulement un peu le français.
1. Comment parlez-vous l'espagnol ?
2. Je ne parle pas couramment l'espagnol.
1. Comment parlez-vous l'anglais ?
2. Je parle l'anglais très couramment.
1. Comment parlez-vous l'allemand ?
2. Je parle l'allemand assez couramment.
1. Comment parlez-vous l'italien ?
2. Je ne parle pas du tout l'italien.

Etc., etc.

[1] In the first series of questions the word *français* (= "in French") is used adverbially, and, therefore, without the article. In the second series, *français* (= "the French language") is used substantively, and is, therefore, preceded by the article.

41. READING.

Pierre qui roule n'amasse pas mousse.
stone which rolls gathers moss.

"A rolling stone gathers no moss."

42. Dans cette demeure tranquille
In home quiet
Repose notre bon ami;
rests our
Il vécut toujours à la ville,
lived always in city
Et son cœur fut toujours ici.
his heart was

FLORIAN.

CHAPTER IV.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

43. The **Indefinite Article**, "a" or "an," is *un*, masculine, and *une*, feminine. It is used only in the singular.

---

44. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

un marchand,	a merchant.	**mon,**	my.
un paletot,	a coat.	**ma,**	
un gilet,	a waistcoat, vest.	**son,**	his or her.
un col,	a collar.	**sa,**	
un chapeau,	a hat.	**votre,**	your.
un ami,	a friend.	**elle,**	she.
d'un marchand,	of a merchant.	**où,**	where.
un couteau,	a knife.	**malade,**	sick, ill.
		qu'est-ce que?	what?

45. The definite article, *le, la, les*, is often used in French where we have in English the possessive pronoun; as: *à la main*, in his hand. The possessive pronoun is used in French to avoid ambiguity in the ownership, or for emphasis.

46. Possessive pronouns agree with the object possessed.

47. *Mon* and *son* refer to masculine nouns; *ma* and *sa* to feminine ones. However, before nouns beginning with a vowel or silent "h," *mon* and *son* are used for both genders.

48. EXERCISE.[1]

1. My son has a black coat. 2. A Frenchman does not speak English$_3$ very$_1$ well.$_2$ 3. We have a good friend. 4. A daughter of that woman has my sister's green pencil.

[1] Figures *below* the line indicate the French order of words.

5. Have you a knife? 6. In[1] this city we have a merchant. 7. That merchant has a yellow$_2$ coat$_1$, a blue$_2$ vest$_1$, and a round$_2$ hat.$_1$ 8. He is not very handsome. 9. His house is large. 10. His wife is tall. 11. Where is she? 12. Is she ill? 13. She is not here, she is in Germany. 14. I have his knife. 15. My ear is red.

[1] *Dans.*

49. INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSE OF *AVOIR* "to have," AND *ÊTRE* "to be."

	J'avais,	I had.		**J'étais,**	I was.
	tu avais,	thou hadst.		**tu étais,**	thou wast.
(**elle**)	**il avait,**	(she) he had.	(**elle**)	**il était,**	(she) he was.
	nous avions,	we had.		**nous étions,**	we were.
	vous aviez,	you had.		**vous étiez,**	you were.
(**elles**)	**ils avaient,**	they had.	(**elles**)	**ils étaient,**	they were.

50. These endings (*-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient*) are those of the imperfect of all verbs, *without exception*. As to its meaning, the imperfect has no real equivalent in English; it may, in a few cases, be rendered by "I had," "I was having," "I used to have," etc. (Cf. Part II., § 393.)

51. INFLECTION OF THE PAST DEFINITE OF *AVOIR*, AND *ÊTRE*.

	J'eus,	I had.		**Je fus,**	I was.
	tu eus,	thou hadst.		**tu fus,**	thou wast.
(**elle**)	**il eut,**	(she) he had.	(**elle**)	**il fut,**	(she) he was.
	nous eûmes,	we had.		**nous fûmes,**	we were.
	vous eûtes,	you had.		**vous fûtes,**	you were.
(**elles**)	**ils eurent,**	they had.	(**elles**)	**ils furent,**	they were.

52. Although we give the same translation for the past definite and the imperfect, these two tenses differ *essentially* in their meaning. The past definite expresses a *circumscribed, definite, completed action* in the past, and is

used to report historical *facts*, while the imperfect is used to *describe*, to express *continued* past action or *state*. (Cf. Part II., § 393–98.)

53. EXERCISES.

1. La rose est une fleur. 2. Un père et un fils. 3. Une mère et une fille. 4. Un jardin et un arbre. 5. Un père et sa fille. 6. Une mère et son fils. 7. Le jardin avait des fleurs. 8. La sœur de mon ami avait un beau chapeau. 9. Elle était malade. 10. Ce marchand fut mon ami. 11. Cette femme avait un grand chapeau. 12. Je suis bien sage. 13. Est-elle la fille de mon ami le marchand? 14. Où est mon paletot? 15. L'enfant était-il malade? 16. Qu' est-ce que vous aviez à la main? 17. Nous avions un couteau. 18. Avez-vous de l'eau?

54. 1. A father and his daughter. 2. A mother and her son. 3. A flower of the garden. 4. Is the merchant your friend? 5. This is my book. 6. Her hat is white. 7. His house is large. 8. We used to have a young horse. 9. She was in [1] Paris [2] and we were in [1] Berlin.[3] 10. Are you well? 11. He was in [4] America.[4] 12. We used to have a large house. 13. A sister of the merchant was ill. 14. Your (lady) friend was here. 15. Where is his book? 16. They had [some] pencils and [some] books. 17. He was in [5] the [5] city.[5] 18. Is she well?

[1] *à.* [2] *Paris.* [3] *Berlin.* [4] *en Amérique.* [5] *en ville.*

---

55. VOCABULARY.

Comment s'appelle?	(how is called,) what is the name of?
Comment s'appelle cela?	(how is that called,) what is the name of that?
Qu'est-ce que c'est?	what is that?
C'est,	it is, this is.
Cela s'appelle,	(that is called,) that is.

Cela s'appelle-t-il . . .?	is that called, is that?		
Est-ce . . .?	is this (or that)?		
avez-vous?	have you?	**les mains,**	the hands.
ou,	or.	**le doigt,**	the finger.
ni . . . ni . . .,	neither . . . nor.	**le pouce,**	the thumb.
deux,	two.	**l'index,**	the index-finger.
chacun,	every one.	**le médius,**	the middle finger.
plus,	more.	**l'annulaire,**	the ring finger.
que,	than.	**le petit doigt,**	the little finger.
qui,	who.	**le poing,**	the fist.

56. The negative *ne* is sometimes followed by *ni . . . ni . . .* to give the sense of "neither . . . nor . . ." Ex.: *Je* ***ne suis ni*** *grand ni petit,* "I am *neither* tall *nor* short."

57. CONVERSATION. — La main.

1. Comment s'appelle cela?
2. Cela s'appelle une main.
1. Qu'est-ce que c'est?
2. C'est une main.
1. Comment s'appelle cela?
2. Cela s'appelle un doigt.
1. Comment s'appelle cela?
2. Cela s'appelle deux mains.
1. Avez-vous une main ou deux mains?
2. J'ai deux mains.
1. Avons-nous chacun deux mains?
2. Oui, nous avons chacun deux mains.

Etc., etc.

1. Qu'est-ce que c'est?
2. C'est un doigt.
1. Comment s'appelle ce doigt-ci?
2. Il s'appelle le pouce.
1. Comment s'appelle ce doigt-ci?
2. Il s'appelle l'index.

Etc., etc.

1. Avez-vous un pouce ou deux pouces ?
2. J'ai deux pouces.
1. Avons-nous chacun deux pouces ?
2. Oui, nous avons chacun deux pouces.
1. Est-ce le pouce ?
2. Oui, c'est le pouce.
1 Est-ce le pouce ou l'index ?
2. C'est le pouce.
1. Est-ce l'index ou le médius ?
2. Ce n'est ni l'index, ni le médius, c'est le pouce.

Etc., etc.

58. READING.

PROVERBE.

C'est en forgeant que l'on devient forgeron.
by forging that one becomes smith

"Practice makes perfect."

---

59. L'homme est un dieu tombé qui se souvient des cieux.
god fallen remembers heaven

"Man is a fallen god who remembers heaven."

LAMARTINE.

60.

Cette ville that city	That city
Aux longs cris, with shouts	from which comes a long rumbling,
Qui profile which shows in profile	where stand out upon the sky
Des toits gris, some roofs gray	gray roofs,
Des toits frêles, some roofs frail	frail roofs,
Cent tourelles, hundreds little towers	hundreds of little towers,
Clochers grêles, spires slim	frail spires,
C'est Paris.	that is Paris.

VICTOR HUGO.

61. LAMARTINE ET VICTOR HUGO.

Lamartine et Victor Hugo sont deux grands poètes français. Ils sont nés[1] : le[2] premier[2] en dix-sept cent quatre-vingt-dix (1790), et le[3] dernier[3] en mil huit cent deux (1802). Ils sont morts : [4] le[2] premier[2] en dix-huit cent soixante-neuf (1869), le[3] dernier[3] en mil huit cent quatre-vingt-cinq (1885). Avez-vous lu[5] les livres de ces auteurs[6] ? Non ? Pourquoi[7] ? Parce[8] que[8] vous ne pouvez[9] pas les[10] lire[10] en français, je suppose. Les traductions[11] sont toujours[12] inférieures[13] à l'original. Quel est le livre en prose le plus célèbre[14] de Victor Hugo ? C'est "les Misérables." Pouvez[9]-vous prononcer[15] ce mot[16] "les Misérables ? "

[1] born.
[2] the former.
[3] the latter.
[4] dead.
[5] read.
[6] authors.
[7] why.
[8] because.
[9] can.
[10] read them.
[11] translations.
[12] always.
[13] inferior.
[14] celebrated.
[15] pronounce.
[16] word.

CHAPTER V.

VERBS.

62. All French verbs are conjugated according to one of four forms, called conjugations. These conjugations are distinguished by the endings of the present infinitive.

Verbs of the 1st conjugation end in **-er** (Chanter).
" " 2d " " " **-ir** (Finir).
" " 3d " " " **-oir** (Recevoir.)
" " 4th " " " **-re** (Rompre).

63. The present participle invariably ends in **ant**. It is important to know this tense, as its *stem* — that is, that part which remains after dropping the ending — is used to form several other tenses; i.e., the plural of the present indicative, the imperfect indicative, and the present subjunctive.

64. INFLECTION OF THE VERBS

CHANTER,	*FINIR,*	*RECEVOIR,*	*ROMPRE.*
to sing,	to finish,	to receive,	to break.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Chant**ant,**	Finiss**ant,**	Recev**ant,**	Romp**ant.**
singing,	finishing,	receiving,	breaking.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1st Conj.
Je chant-e, I sing, do sing, or am singing.
tu chant-es.
il chant-e.
nous chant-ons.
vous chant-ez.
ils chant-ent.

2D CONJ.	**Je fin-i-s**, I finish, do finish, or am finishing.
	tu fin-i-s.
	il fin-i-t.
	nous fin-iss-ons.
	vous fin-iss-ez.
	ils fin-iss-ent.
3D CONJ.	**Je reç-ois**, I receive, do receive, or am receiving.
	tu reç-ois.
	il reç-oit.
	nous recev-ons.
	vous recev-ez.
	ils reçoiv-ent.
4TH CONJ.	**Je romp-s**, I break, do break, am breaking.
	tu romp-s.
	il romp-t.
	nous romp-ons.
	vous romp-ez.
	ils romp-ent.

65. The above paradigm shows that: (*a*) the three persons of the plural have identical endings in the four conjugations (i.e., *ons, ez, ent*); (*b*) that the endings of the singular in Conjugations II., III., and IV., are the same (i.e., *s* for the first two persons, and *t* for the third).

66. Verbs in *'endre* preserve the *d* in the third person singular, but do not take *t*. Ex.: *entendre, il entend.*

67. EXERCISE.

1. You are singing. 2. We used to have a large tree in the garden. 3. I am finishing your book. 4. We are singing in German, and he is singing in Italian. 5. Madame Patti sings in French, in Italian, and in Spanish. 6. We receive a French$_2$ book$_1$. 7. What[1] do[2] you[2] receive[2] from your friend? 8. That Spaniard who sings so well is neither tall nor short. 9. The children are breaking the ice[3] of the lake.[4] 10. What[1] do they break? 11. Do they break the ice?

[1] *Que.* [2] receive you: for the interrogative forms, Cf. § 70.
[3] *glace* (fem.). [4] *lac* (masc.).

68. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.		*Feminine.*	
un morceau,	a piece.	**une leçon,**	a lesson.
le savon,	the soap.	**une rue,**	a street.
l'enfant,	the child.	**la musique,**	the music.
l'oncle,	the uncle.	**la chambre,**	the room.
un maître,	a teacher.	**la table,**	the table.
un voisin,	a neighbor.	**une montre,**	a watch.
l'opéra,	the opera.	**une pendule,**	a clock.
le théâtre,	the theater.	**l'Amérique,**	America.
Paris,	Paris.	**la maison,**	the house.
Berlin,	Berlin.		
Guillaume,	William.		
Londres,	London.		
les écoliers,	the scholars.		

69. **Imperative.** — From the present indicative is formed the imperative, by suppressing the subject-pronoun (and the final *s* of the second person singular, in verbs of Conjugation I., except when followed by pronouns *en*, *y*).

EXAMPLES:

	INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
1*st. Conj.*	**tu chantes.**	**chante.**
	nous chantons.	**chantons.**
	vous chantez.	**chantez.**
2*d. Conj.*	**tu finis.**	**finis.**
	nous finissons.	**finissons.**
	vous finissez.	**finnissez.**

70. **Interrogative form.** — (*a*). In asking a question, the subject-pronoun is placed after the verb. Ex.: *finis-tu? chantons-nous?* etc.

(*b*). But, when the subject is a noun, it is generally placed first, and the interrogation is formed by a corresponding pronoun placed after the verb. Ex.: *Monsieur Leblanc finit-il? Monsieur Leblanc reçoit-il?* etc., instead of *finit Monsieur Leblanc?* etc.

(*c*). When the verb in the third person singular ends in a vowel, the letter *t* is placed between the verb and the subject-pronoun. Ex.: *Chante-t-il? a-t-il? a-t-elle?*

(*d*). In the first person singular of the verbs of Conj. I., the interrogation is formed with the locution *est-ce que* followed by the verb in its regular form. So, instead of *chante-je*, we must say ***est-ce que je chante.*** (The form *chanté-je* is seldom used.)

71.

I.	**aimer,**	to love.	II.	**bâtir,**	to build.
	louer,	to praise.		**punir,**	to punish.
	demeurer,	to live, reside, dwell.		**bénir,**	to bless.
			III.	**avoir,**	to have.
	jouer,	to play.	IV.	**dire,**	to say.
	montrer,	to show.		**faire,**	to do (or make).
	acheter,	to buy.		**entendre,**	to hear.
	jeter,	to throw.		**apprendre,**	to learn.
	appeler,	to call.		**en,**	in.

72. The great majority of French verbs belong to the first conjugation.

73. Verbs in *'eler*, *'eter*, double the *l* or the *t* before a silent *e*; but *acheter* and a few others take a grave accent on penult *e*, instead of doubling the *l* or the *t*. Ex.: *appeler, j'appelle; jeter, je jette;* but *acheter* makes *j'achète.*

74. EXERCISES.

1. J'aime mon frère. 2. Guillaume achète un livre. 3. J'apprends ma leçon. 4. Le "Grand Opéra" est un théâtre de Paris. 5. Nous demeurons dans cette rue-là. 6. Mon oncle demeure en Amérique. 7. Mon voisin bâtit une grande maison. 8. Il avait une petite maison verte. 9. Mon ami appelle sa sœur. 10. Le maître loue les bons écoliers. 11. Vous n'apprenez pas bien votre leçon de fran-

çais. 12. Il aime l'opéra. 13. La table était très belle. 14. Il montre la table à son ami. 15. Ma sœur joue très bien. 16. L'écolier jette son livre dans la rue. 17. Le maître punit l'écolier.

75. 1. He loves his brother. 2. Where do[1] you[1] live[1]? 3. What[2] do[2] you[2] buy[2]? 4. I buy a piece of soap. 5. He is learning English. 6. [The] children love [the] music. 7. She is learning her lesson. 8. William shows his knife. 9. They play in the garden. 10. They say[3] nothing. 11. I hear a good piece of music. 12. Our friends live in[4] Paris. 13. The teacher calls the students. 14. What[5] are[5] you[5] doing[5]? 15. We are playing. 16. Are you in America?

[1] Cf. § 19. [2] *Qu'achetez-vous?* [3] *ne disent.* [4] *à.* [5] *Que faites-vous?*

---

76. VOCABULARY.

en français,	in French.	**sur,**	on, upon.
voulez-vous?	will you, do you wish?	**sous,**	under.
depuis . . . jusqu'à,	from . . . to.	**devant,**	in front of.
y,	there (here).	**derrière,**	behind.
entre,	between.	**l'endroit,**	the place.

---

aller,	to go.	**vous allez,**	you go.
je vais,	I go.	**la porte,**	the door.
il va,	he goes.	**la chaise,**	the chair.

77. CONVERSATION. — L'endroit.

1. Où êtes-vous?
2. Je suis devant vous.
1. Où suis-je?
2. Vous êtes devant la chaise.
1. Où est le livre?
2. Il est sur la table.
1. Où est la table?
2. Elle est sur le plancher.

1. Où est le chapeau ?
2. Il est dans la petite chambre.
1. Où est la chambre ?
2. Elle est dans la maison.

Etc, etc.

1. Etes-vous devant la porte ?
2. Oui, je suis devant la porte (or, Oui, j'**y** suis).
1. Suis-je devant la chaise ?
2. Oui, vous êtes devant la chaise (or, Oui, vous **y** êtes).
1. Le livre est-il sur la table ?
2. Oui, il est sur la table (or, Oui, il **y** est).
1. La table est-elle sur le plancher ?
2. Oui, elle est sur le plancher (or, Oui, elle **y** est)
1. Où est la montre ?
2. Elle est dans votre main, entre votre pouce et votre index.
1. La montre est-elle dans ma main, entre mon pouce et mon index ?
2. Oui, elle est dans votre main, entre votre pouce et votre index (or, Oui, elle **y** est).

78. *Y* is an adverb which has acquired the value of a pronoun. One of its commonest uses is to act as an adverbial modifier of place, in order to avoid repetition. It can, then, be translated by "here" or "there."

79. READING.

PROVERBE.

Qui se ressemble s'assemble.
"Birds of a feather flock together."

---

80. Mon verre n'est pas grand, mais je bois dans mon verre. glass but drink

A. DE MUSSET.

81. ALFRED DE MUSSET.

Louis Charles Alfred de Musset est né en mil huit cent dix (1810) et est mort en mil huit cent cinquante-sept (1857). C'est un des meilleurs [1] écrivains [2] de ce siècle.[3] A l'âge de vingt [4]-trois [4] ans [5] il était célèbre. Il écrivit [6] beaucoup [7] de [7] poésies,[8] et un roman [9] en prose, intitulé : [10] "Confessions d'un Enfant du Siècle," description admirable de la situation morale de l'époque [11] où [22] ce livre fut écrit.[12] Alfred de Musset écrivit [6] dans la "Revue [13] des deux Mondes," [14] la plus importante des revues françaises. Il a donné [15] au théâtre plusieurs [16] comédies et "proverbes." Il est encore [17] le poète préféré [18] des jeunes [19] gens [19] et fut le favori [20] des gens [21] du [21] monde.[21]

[1] best.
[2] writers.
[3] century.
[4] twenty-three.
[5] years.
[6] wrote.
[7] many.
[8] poems.
[9] novel.
[10] entitled.
[11] epoch, time.
[12] written.
[13] Magazine.
[14] Worlds.
[15] given.
[16] several.
[17] still, yet.
[18] preferred.
[19] young people.
[20] favorite.
[21] society people.
[22] in which, when; cf. § 371.

82. FIRST REVIEW LESSON.

1. Decline the definite article.

2. What adjectives have only one form for the masculine and the feminine, and what adjectives double the final consonant before adding a silent *e*?

3. Translate "do" in the sentence, "Do you speak French."

4. What are the four forms of the demonstrative adjective, and when is each used?

5. What is the use of demonstrative pronouns?

6. In the sentences "They think," "People think," "One thinks," "It is thought," translate the words "they," "people," "one," and also the passive form.

7. Give the two forms of "my," "his," and "her," and explain their uses.

8. What are the endings of the imperfect indicative?

9. What is the general meaning of the imperfect, and of the past definite?

10. How many conjugations are there, and what are their infinitive endings?

11. What tenses are formed from the stem of the present participle?

12. How is the interrogation formed: 1st, when the subject is a pronoun; 2d, when it is a noun?

13. Explain the use of the phrase *est-ce que.*

14. Explain the meaning and use of *y.*

83. EXERCISE.

1. The water of this city is not good. 2. This white house is in France, and that one in Spain. 3. My brother's friend was in Germany. 4. My sister has a beautiful blue

hat. 5. Have they some paper, some pencils, and some books? 6. Russian and French are spoken in Russia. 7. His mother is very ill. 8. What did you have in your hand? 9. Was she in the city? 10. Will you go in the garden, and call the gardener? Do you go there? Do you call the gardener?

CHAPTER VI.

Comparison of Adjectives.

84. There are two degrees of comparison: the comparative and the superlative.

85. Comparative. — (*a*). The comparative degree of *superiority* is formed by putting the adverb *plus*, "more," before the adjective. Ex.: *Le livre rouge est* **plus** *petit* **que** *le livre vert.*

(*b*). The adverbs *aussi*, "as," and *moins*, "less," indicate, the former, a comparative of *equality*, the latter, a comparative of *inferiority*. Ex.: *Le plancher est* **aussi** *grand* **que** *le plafond* (equality). *La table est* **moins** *grande* **que** *le plancher* (inferiority).

(*c*). "Than," and "as" in the second part of the comparison are to be translated as we see, by *que*.

86. The **superlative** is formed by *prefixing* the definite article (*le, la, les*) to the comparative. Ex.: *Mon livre est* **le plus** *petit.*

Les Alpes sont **les plus** *grandes montagnes de l'Europe*, "The Alps are the largest mountains of Europe."

87. The above examples show that adjectives in the comparative or superlative degree follow the same rule of agreement as in the positive.

88. *Bon*, "good," has *meilleur*, "better" for comparative, and *le meilleur*, "the best" for superlative.

89. EXERCISE.

1. My sister's hat is larger than my [1] mother's.[1] 2. This book is better than that. 3. That Swede is as tall as this

Englishman. 4. The green$_2$ pencil$_1$ is the smallest. 5. He shows$_2$ me$_1$[2] his uncle's large house. 6. Do you wish to buy this house? 7. His friend lives in the smallest house of this city. 8. The theaters of Paris are larger than those[3] of Bordeaux, but they are not more beautiful.[4] 9. The watch is smaller than the clock. 10. Is the table as large as the floor?

[1] that (= *celui*) of my mother. [2] *me.* [3] *ceux.* [4] *beaux.*

90. INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

je chant-ais, I sang, I was singing, I used to sing.
tu chant-ais.
il chant-ait.
nous chant-ions.
vous chant-iez.
ils chant-aient.

je finiss-ais, I finished, I was finishing, I used to finish.
tu finiss-ais.
il finiss-ait.
nous finiss-ions.
vous finiss-iez.
ils finiss-aient.

je recev-ais, I received, I was receiving, I used to receive.
tu recev-ais.
il recev-ait.
nous recev-ions.
vous recev-iez.
ils recev-aient.

je romp-ais, I broke, I was breaking, I used to break.
tu romp-ais.
il romp-ait.
nous romp-ions.
vous romp-iez.
ils romp-aient.

91. Notice the stems of the verbs, which are those of the present participle (Cf. § 63) and the endings, which are the same as for *être* and *avoir*.

92. *Tu* is used instead of *vous* among relatives and intimate friends.

---

93. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le gant,	the glove.	**un monsieur,**	a gentleman.
le pardessus,	the overcoat.	**un animal,**	an animal.
le bras,	the arm.	**des animaux,**	some animals.
le dos,	the back.	**les bras,**	the arms.
le nez,	the nose.		

Feminine.

une chaise,	a chair.	**l'encre,**	the ink.
une cuillère,	a spoon.	**la plume,**	the pen.
une pomme,	an apple.	**une fourchette,**	a fork.
la couleur,	the color.		

---

beaucoup de,	many, much.	**joli,**	pretty.
pas de,	not any, no.	**fatigué,**	tired.
pendant que,	while.	**mûr,**	ripe.
mais,	but.	**prendre,**	to take.
il y a,	there is (or there are).		

94. Nouns ending in *al* form their plural by changing *al* into *aux; cheval,* "horse," makes *chevaux.*

95. *Il y a* is used whether one or more objects are alluded to, and means "there is" or "there are."

96. EXERCISES.

1. Il a mon chapeau. 2. Il y a beaucoup d'animaux dans le jardin. 3. Nous avions des roses. 4. Les marchands montraient des gants et des pardessus. 5. Monsieur Leblond est marchand de chaises. 6. Les enfants jouaient dans le jardin. 7. Les pommes étaient mûres. 8. J'aime beaucoup les pommes. 9. Il y a des fourchettes et des cuillères sur la table. 10. Un monsieur avait une jolie montre. 11. Ils

bâtissaient une maison, mais nous ne bâtissions pas de maison. 12. Les écoliers apprenaient leur[1] leçon pendant que nous étions dans la chambre. 13. Avez-vous de l'encre ? 14. Non, je n'ai pas d'encre, mais j'ai des crayons. 15. Il n'y a pas de couteau sur la table. 16. Où sont les chaises jaunes ? 17. Sont-elles dans la chambre ? 18. Oui, elles y sont.

[1] their.

97. 1. We had many chairs, but no table. 2. Are you in the little room ? 3. Yes, we are. 4. The animals were in the garden. 5. He was showing his house to a gentleman. 6. The apples were ripe. 7. I have a knife, but no spoon. 8. Your ink is blue. 9. The color of your horse is not pretty. 10. His sister was my friend. 11. We were receiving your letter. 12. French is spoken here. 13. You were taking your pen. 14. He used to sing. 15. These chairs used to be black. 16. Why was he showing his house to that gentleman ? 17. We used to take our lessons in the large room. 18. She was singing an opera.

---

98. VOCABULARY.

combien de,	how many, how much.	**un,**	one.
beaucoup,	many, much.	**deux,**	two.
assez,	enough.	**trois,**	three.
autant,	as, as many.	**quatre,**	four.
moins,	less, fewer.	**cinq,**	five.
plus,	more.	**six,**	six.
peu,	few, little.	**sept,**	seven.
trop,	too, too many.	**huit,**	eight.
plusieurs,	several.	**neuf,**	nine.
en,	some, of it, of them, etc., etc.	**dix,**	ten.
moi,	me.		

99. Adverbs of quantity, when preceding a noun, are always followed by *de*, "of." Ex.: *J'ai plus* **de** *livres que vous*, "I have more books than you."

100. *Plusieurs* is both an indefinite adjective and pronoun; it is not followed by *de*. Ex.: *J'ai plusieurs livres*, "I have several books."

101. CONVERSATION. — Combien?

1. Combien de crayons avez-vous?
2. J'ai huit crayons (or, J'**en**[1] ai huit).
1. Combien de doigts avez-vous?
2. J'ai dix doigts (or, J'**en** ai dix).
1. Combien de bras avons-nous?
2. Nous avons deux bras (or, Nous **en** avons deux),
1. Prenons-nous beaucoup de leçons?
2. Oui, nous prenons beaucoup de leçons (or, Nous **en** prenons beaucoup).
1. Avez-vous autant de bras que moi?
2. Oui, j'ai autant de bras que vous (or, J'**en** ai autant que vous).
1. Dans la chambre il y a cinq élèves; y a-t-il peu ou beaucoup d'élèves?
2. Il y a peu d'élèves (or, Il y **en** a peu).
1. Combien de livres y a-t-il sur la table?
2. Il y a plusieurs livres (or, Il y **en** a plusieurs).
1. Avons-nous assez d'encre?
2. Oui, nous avons assez d'encre (or, Nous **en** avons assez).

[1] Cf. § 122

102. READING.

PROVERBES.

En toute chose il faut considérer la fin.
every thing it is necessary to consider end

Patience et longueur de temps
time

Font plus que force ni que rage.
do or

LA FONTAINE.

103. LA FONTAINE.

La Fontaine est le plus grand des fabulistes français. Beaucoup de ses fables sont imitées[1] d'Esope,[2] mais La Fontaine a transformé l'œuvre[3] du poète grec,[4] et en[5] a[5] fait[5] une œuvre essentiellement[6] française. Que dis-je? les fables de La Fontaine sont "de tous les peuples,[7] de tous les temps, de tous les âges. . . . L'enfant s'y[8] amuse,[8] l'homme s'y[9] instruit,[9] le lettré les[10] admire. Elles égalent,[11] par la pureté irréprochable de leur[12] morale, comme[13] par l'inimitable perfection de leur style, les plus belles œuvres du siècle de Louis XIV." Né en seize cent vingt et un (1621), La Fontaine est mort en seize cent quatre-vingt-quinze (1695).

[1] imitated.
[2] from Æsop.
[3] work.
[4] Greek.
[5] has made it.
[6] essentially.
[7] peoples.
[8] is amused by them.
[9] is taught by them.
[10] them.
[11] equal.
[12] their.
[13] as well as.

CHAPTER VII.

Personal Pronouns.

104. Personal pronouns may be used as subjects or as objects.

(*a*). Personal pronouns used as subjects are:

Je,	I.	**nous,**	we.
tu,	thou, you.	**vous,**	you, ye.
il,	he.	**ils,**	they.
elle,	she.	**elles,**	they.

(*b*). Personal pronouns used as objects are:

me, moi,	me, to me.	**nous,**	us, to us.
te, toi,	thee, to thee.	**vous,**	you, to you.
le,	him, it.	**les,**	them.
la,	her, it.	**leur,**	to them.
lui,	to him. / to her. / to it.		

105. Subject-pronouns follow, as to their position, the same rules as in English; i.e., they precede the verb, except in an interrogative sentence. Ex.: *je fais, nous parlons, ils appellent*, etc.; but, *fais-je? parlons-nous? appellent-ils?*

106. Object-pronouns, unlike the English, precede the verb, except in the imperative AFFIRMATIVE. Ex.: *je* ***le*** *prends,* "I take *it,*" *je* ***la*** *vois,* "I see *her,*" ***nous*** *aiment-ils?* "do they love *us?*" but, *prenez-****le****!* "take *it!*" *voyez-****la****!* "see *her!*" *aimez-****les****!* "love *them,*" etc.

107. Whenever the personal pronouns (as subjects or as objects) are placed after the verb, they are joined to it by a hyphen.

108. EXERCISE.

1. Are you buying those horses? Yes, I am buying them. 2. Call me. 3. Hear them. 4. See him. 5. They love us. 6. He punishes him. 7. I call you. 8. Do you throw your book on the floor? No, I do not [throw it]. 9. Is he buying these French books for[1] his sister? 10. Has the child his father's watch? Yes, he has [it]. No, he has not [it]. 11. Does the merchant call his neighbor? Yes, he calls him. No, he does not [call him].

[1] *pour.*

109. When there are *two* object-pronouns, the *indirect* object comes before the *direct*, except in imperative affirmative, and when the indirect is *lui* or *leur* (third person).

110. This order of the object-pronouns will be more clearly understood from the following paradigm:

Subject.	*1st part of the negation, if any.*	*Indirect Object.*	*Direct Object.*	*Verb (or Auxiliary).*	*2d part of the negation, if any.*
Je,		me,	le,	donne,	
tu,		te,	la,	donnes,	
il (elle),		nous,	les,	donne,	*pas,*
nous,		vous,		donnons,	*jamais,*
vous,	*ne,*	*Direct Object.*	*Indirect Object.*	donnez,	etc.
ils (elles),		le,	lui,	donnent,	
		la,	leur,		
		les,			

		Direct Object.	*Indirect Object.*
ORDER IN IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.	*Verb.*	le,	moi,
		la,	nous,
		les,	lui,
			leur,

111. FUTURE TENSE OF VERBS.

The future tense is formed as follows:

In Conjugations I. and II., by adding to the *whole* infinitive the endings *ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont* (formerly present indicative of *avoir*). In Conjugation III., before adding said endings, the diphthong *oi* is to be suppressed.

In Conjugation IV., before adding these endings, the final *e* is to be suppressed.

112. INFLECTION OF THE FUTURE.

chanter (infinitive)		**recevoir** (infinitive)	
Je chanter-ai,		Je recev-r-ai,	
tu chanter-as,		tu recev-r-as,	
(elle) il chanter-a,	I shall sing, etc.	il recev-r-a,	I shall receive, etc.
nous chanter-ons,		nous recev-r-ons,	
vous chanter-ez,		vous recev-r-ez,	
ils chanter-ont,		ils recev-r-ont,	

finir (infinitive)		**rompre** (infinitive)	
Je finir-ai,		Je rompr-ai,	
tu finir-as,		tu rompr-as,	
(elle) il finir-a,	I shall finish, etc.	il rompr-a,	I shall break, etc.
nous finir-ons,		nous rompr-ons,	
vous finir-ez,		vous rompr-ez,	
ils finir-ont,		ils rompr-ont,	

113. The stem of the future of *avoir* is *aur: j'**aurai**, tu **auras**,* etc. The stem of *être* is *ser: je **serai**, tu **seras**,* etc.

---

114. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le facteur,	the postman.	**l'anneau,**	the ring.
le chant,	the song.	**le journal,**	the newspaper.
l'oiseau,	the bird.	**le chef-d'œuvre,**	the masterpiece.

Feminine.

la dame,	the lady.	**la lettre,**	the letter.
la demoiselle,	the young lady.	**la bague,**	the ring.
Madame,	Mrs.	**la porte,**	the door.
Mademoiselle,	Miss.	**la mort,**	the death.
la chanson,	the song.	**la viande,**	the meat.

---

rendre,	to return, to give back.	**apporter,**	to bring.
oublier,	to forget.	**dire,**	to say.
manger,	to eat.	**n'est-ce pas?**	is it not so?
parler,	to speak.	**par,**	by.
entrer,	to enter.	**puis,**	then.
chanter,	to sing.	**d'abord,**	at first.
marcher,	to walk.	**ensuite,**	afterwards.
donner,	to give.		

115. EXERCISES.

1. Le facteur me donnera une lettre. 2. Nous mangerons des pommes. 3. Vous nous donnerez la leçon, n'est-ce pas? 4. Oui, je vous la donnerai. 5. Le maître punit-il les enfants? 6. Oui, il les punit. 7. Donnerez-vous ces livres à mon frère? 8. Oui, je les lui donnerai. 9. Non, je ne les lui donnerai pas. 10. Ma sœur vous rendra-t-elle les livres? 11. Non, elle ne me les rendra pas. 12. Pourquoi ne vous les rendra-t-elle pas? 13. Parce qu'elle les lira. 14. Parlerez-vous à cette dame? 15. Non, je ne lui parlerai pas. 16. Parlez-moi de madame[1] votre mère. 17. Je vous parlerai d'abord de mon père, qui est malade. 18. J'entrerai dans la maison de mon père et je lui dirai: "Donnez-moi mes livres." 19. Avez-vous mes crayons? Oui, je les ai. Apportez-les-moi.

[1] Notice the title of respect used in speaking to a person of his immediate relatives.

116. 1. Have you more pencils than Mrs. Lefèvre? 2. Do you take your lesson? 3. Yes, I take it. 4. Who

gives it to you? Mr. X. gives it to me. 5. To whom do you give this book? 6. I give it to my friend, and he will give it to you. 7. What will you give us? 8. I shall give you my sister's beautiful books. 9. Will you give them to us? 10. Yes, we shall [give them to you]. 11. What do you give my brother? 12. I give him nothing. 13. Does she bring you her book? 14. No, she does not [bring it to me]. 15. Will you speak to Mrs. R.? 16. No, I shall not [speak to her]. 17. Will they give me that apple? 18. No, they will not [give it to you]. 19. There is a pencil on the table. I give it to you, you give it to him, he gives it to them, they give it to you, and you bring it to me.

---

117. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

Le mot,	the word.				
l'alphabet, / **l'a b c,**	the alphabet.				
		l'accent,	**aigu,**	the accent,	acute.
			grave,		grave.
			circonflexe,		circumflex.
		l'an,	the year.		
		Pierre,	Peter.		

Feminine.

la lettre,	the letter.	**la cédille,**	the cedilla.
la syllabe,	the syllable.	**l'année,**	the year.

---

pouvoir,	can.	**épeler,**	to spell.
je peux,	I can.	**réciter,**	to recite.
tu peux,	thou canst.	**ainsi,**	thus, so.
il peut,	he can.	**aussi,**	also.
nous pouvons,	we can.	**aujourd'hui,**	to-day.
vous pouvez,	you can.	**alors,**	then.
ils peuvent,	they can.		

118. CONVERSATION — L'Alphabet.

1. Pouvez-vous réciter l'alphabet français?
2. Oui, je peux réciter l'alphabet français.

1. Pouvez-vous épeler le mot "France"?
2. Oui, je peux épeler le mot "France."
1. Comment épelle-t-on le mot "France"?
2. On l'épelle ainsi: "F (eff) R (air) A (ah) N (enn) C (say) E (ai)."
1. Votre ami peut-il épeler le mot "table"?
2. Oui, il peut l'épeler.
1. Combien de lettres a le mot "table"?
2. Il a cinq lettres (or, Il *en* a cinq).
1. Combien de lettres a le mot "constitution"?
2. Il a douze lettres (or, Il *en* a douze).

Etc., etc.

1. Combien de syllabes a le mot "constitution"?
2. Le mot "constitution" a quatre syllabes: cons-ti-tu-tion.
1. Combien de syllabes a le mot "plancher"?
2. Le mot plancher a deux syllabes: plan-cher.

Etc., etc.

119. READING.

PROVERBE.

Ce n'est que le premier pas qui coûte.
It is the first step that costs.

---

120. A vaincre sans péril, on triomphe sans gloire.
In conquering without danger one triumphs glory.
CORNEILLE.

121. CORNEILLE.

Pierre Corneille, né en 1606 à Rouen, où il fut d'abord destiné au barreau,[1] vint[2] à Paris en 1629, débuta[3] par des comédies qui eurent alors un grand succès. En 1635, il

donna [4] sa première tragédie, "Médée." L'année suivante,[5] parut [6] "le Cid," le premier de ses chefs-d'œuvre. Puis "Horace," "Cinna," tous [7] deux [7] en 1639 ; "Polyeucte," "la Mort de Pompée," et "Rodogune" vinrent [2] ensuite. En 1642, il donna [4] au théâtre la première comédie de caractère, "le Menteur." [8] Admis [9] à l'Académie en 1647, il produisit [10] encore un grand nombre de pièces qui réussirent [11] peu.[12]

[1] bar.
[2] came, past definite of *venir*.
[3] made his *début*.
[4] gave, past definite of *donner*.
[5] following.
[6] appeared.
[7] both.
[8] the liar.
[9] admitted.
[10] produced.
[11] succeeded.
[12] little.

CHAPTER VIII.

PRONOUN "EN."

122. The **pronoun** *en* has no equivalent in English; it takes the place of a noun preceded by *de*, "of" or "from," or its compounds, *du* (= *de le*) *des* (= *de les*) — a number, or an adverb of quantity. (Cf. § 98.) The pronoun *en* always directly precedes the verb.

EXAMPLES.

Venez-vous ***de*** *Rome?* "Do you come from Rome?" *Oui, j'****en*** *viens.* "Yes, I come *from there*" (or, *Oui, je viens* ***de Rome***).

Avez-vous ***du*** *pain?* "Have you some bread?" *Oui, j'****en*** *ai* (or, *J'ai* ***du pain***).

Mangez-vous ***des*** *pommes?* "Do you eat some apples?" *Oui, j'****en*** *mange* (or, *Je mange* ***des pommes***).

Donnez-vous ***des*** *crayons à mon ami?* "Do you give pencils to my friend?" *Oui, je lui* ***en*** *donne.*

Chantez-vous ***deux*** *chansons? Oui, nous* ***en*** *chantons* ***deux.***

Apportons-nous ***beaucoup de*** *livres? Oui, nous* ***en*** *apportons* ***beaucoup,*** etc.

123. From the last two examples, it will be seen that it is necessary to express the *number* or *adverb* which precedes a noun replaced by ***en.***

124. **Conditional Mood of Verbs.** — The conditional is formed with the stem of the future, to which the endings *ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient* are added.

125. These endings are the same as those of the imperfect. (Cf. § 50, 90.)

126. INFLECTION OF THE CONDITIONAL.

(Cf. *Future Indicative:* **Chanter-ai, Finir-ai, Recevr-ai, Rompr-ai.**)

je chanter-ais.	**je recevr-ais.**
tu chanter-ais.	**tu recevr-ais.**
il chanter-ait.	**il recevr-ait.**
nous chanter-ions.	**nous recevr-ions.**
vous chanter-iez.	**vous recevr-iez.**
ils chanter-aient.	**ils recevr-aient.**
je finir-ais.	**je rompr-ais.**
tu finir-ais.	**tu rompr-ais.**
il finir-ait.	**il rompr-ait.**
nous finir-ions.	**nous rompr-ions.**
vous finir-iez.	**vous rompr-iez.**
ils finir-aient.	**ils rompr-aient.**

127. The stem of the conditional of *avoir* is *aur: j'aurais*, etc. The stem of *être* is *ser: je serais*, etc.

128. The conditional is often to be translated by "I should (or would) sing, finish," etc. (Cf. § 221, 403.)

---

129. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le train,	the train.	**Jean,**	John.
le thé,	the tea.	**le verre,**	the glass.
le garçon,	the boy.	**le théâtre,**	the theater.
le crayon,	the lead-pencil.	**François,**	Francis.
le café,	the coffee.		

Feminine.

la tasse,	the cup.	**la tante,**	the aunt.
la leçon,	the lesson.	**la jambe,**	the leg.

trouver,	to find.	**diligent,**	industrious.
boire,	to drink.	**vite,**	quickly, fast.
mordre,	to bite.	**l'un l'autre,**	one another.
demander,	to ask.	**pas de,**	not any, no.
marcher,	to walk.	**chez,**	at the house (or store) of.
souper,	to take tea.	**auparavant,**	previously, first.
ce soir,	this evening.	**quand,**	when.
bientôt,	soon.		

130. EXERCISES.

1. Il me donnerait un livre. 2. Il aimera son frère. 3. Le train arriverait bientôt. 4. Il nous demanderait des journaux. 5. Demandiez-vous des fleurs à votre ami ? Oui, nous lui en demandions. 6. Notre voisin et ami nous demandera des fleurs et nous lui en donnerons. 7. Preniez-vous des leçons de français ? Oui, nous en prenions. 8. Qui donnait les leçons ? 9. Le professeur les donnait. 10. Vous prendrez une tasse de café, mais je n'en prendrai pas. 11. Prendriez-vous des leçons ? Non, je n'en prendrais pas. 12. Ouvriez-vous votre livre ? 13. Nous recevrions des fleurs. 14. Nous ne recevrons pas de livres. 15. Pouvez-vous lire votre leçon ? 16. Le cheval nous mordrait. 17. Il me montrerait son couteau. 18. Prendriez-vous du thé ? Non, je n'en prendrais pas.

131. 1. Charles would learn his lesson. 2. Francis would give me his lead-pencil. 3. Would you give me some books ? 4. Yes, I would give you some. 5. I shall find my spoon. 6. I should have more pencils. 7. The train would arrive. 8. You would take tea with us this afternoon. 9. My friend would live in Paris. 10. My friend's aunt will arrive to-night. 11. Please give me a glass of water. 12. I would give you a cup of tea. 13. I will drink a cup of tea, first. 14. What were you drinking ? 15. We were drinking coffee. 16. Had you any books ? 17. Yes, we had some. 18. How many had you ?

19. We [of them] had ten. 20. Had you more books than we? 21. Yes, we [of them] had more.

---

132. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

du pain, some bread.
du beurre, some butter.
du fromage, some cheese.
des légumes, some vegetables.
des fruits, some fruits.

Feminine.

la salle à manger, the dining-room.
de la viande, some meat.

---

où vous asseyez-vous? where do you sit?
je m'assieds, I sit.
nous nous asseyons, we sit.
merci, thank you.
pour, to, in order to.
s'il vous plaît, if you please.
je veux, I wish, want, will.
il veut, he wishes, etc.
nous voulons, we wish, etc.
vous voulez, you wish, etc.
ils veulent, they wish, etc.

133. CONVERSATION. — La salle à manger.

1. Où sommes-nous?
2. Nous sommes dans la salle à manger.
1. Où mange-t-on?
2. On mange dans la salle à manger.
1. Où nous asseyons-nous pour manger?
2. Nous nous asseyons à table.
1. Où vous asseyez-vous, mademoiselle?
2. Je m'assieds à table.
1. Que voulez-vous manger?
2. Je veux manger du pain et de la viande.
1. Voulez-vous aussi du fromage?
2. Oui, s'il vous plaît.
1. Donnez-moi du beurre, s'il vous plaît.
1. Ce monsieur et cette dame veulent-ils des fruits?
2. Non, ils n'en veulent pas.

1. Mangez-vous des légumes ?
2. Non, nous n'en mangeons pas.
1. Cette demoiselle mange-t-elle des fruits ?
2. Oui, elle en mange : elle mange des pommes.
1. Madame Lenoir veut-elle du fromage ?
2. Oui, elle en veut, mais Mlle Lenoir n'en veut pas.
1. Je veux du pain : en voulez-vous ?
2. Non, merci, nous n'en voulons pas.

Etc., etc.

134. READING.

PROVERBE.

Tout passe, tout casse, tout lasse.
everything passeth, breaketh, groweth tiresome.

135. ALEXANDRE DUMAS.

Auteur dramatique et romancier[1] (mil huit cent trois — mil huit cent soixante-dix : 1803–1870). Ses ouvrages[2] sont caractérisés par une fécondité inépuisable,[3] une facilité d'invention et d'exécution prodigieuse, une promptitude incroyable à s'assimiler les idées, les matériaux[4] de ses contemporains ou de ses prédécesseurs. L'originalité de son talent est dans l'habileté[5] à mettre en œuvre, la force des combinaisons, la continuité de mouvement.

[1] novelist. [2] works. [3] inexhaustible. [4] materials. [5] skill.

CHAPTER IX.

Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns.

136. We have already seen (§ 44) the possessive adjectives in the singular. The plural forms are:

mes, my.	**tes,** thy.	**ses,** his, her or its.
nos, notre, our.	**vos, votre,** your.	**leurs, leur,** their.

137. These forms, with the exception of *notre, votre,* and *leur,* are used to express the possession of several objects. Ex.: *mes livres,* my books; *nos livres,* our books; *leurs livres,* their books. But, *notre livre,* our book; *leur livre,* their book, etc.

138. Aside from these possessive adjectives, there are possessive pronouns, which are used whenever the repetition of the noun is to be avoided. These pronouns are:

Singular.		Plural.		
Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	
le mien,	**la mienne,**	**les miens,**	**les miennes,**	mine.
le tien,	**la tienne,**	**les tiens,**	**les tiennes,**	thine.
le sien,	**la sienne,**	**les siens,**	**les siennes,**	his or hers.
le nôtre,	**la nôtre,**	**les nôtres,**	**les nôtres,**	ours.
le vôtre,	**la vôtre,**	**les vôtres,**	**les vôtres,**	yours.
le leur,	**la leur,**	**les leurs,**	**les leurs,**	theirs.

139. The pronouns contained in the first two columns refer to *one,* and those in the last two columns to several objects (of the masculine gender in columns 1 and 3, of the feminine in columns 2 and 4).

140. Occasionally, *à moi, à toi, à lui*, etc., can be used instead of the above pronouns. Ex.: *Ce crayon est-il à vous? Non, il n'est pas à moi.* "Is that pencil yours? No, it is not mine."

141. EXERCISE.

1. Whose hat is that?[1] It is mine. 2. That house is yours, this is ours. 3. Is that the merchant's coat? Yes, it is his. 4. She is my friend and yours. 5. What books do you give me? I give you mine. 6. [In] what room does that man enter? [In] his. 7. I have two pencils: which is yours? This is mine. 8. Is[2] that[2] your letter? Yes, it is mine. 9. Can you spell my name[3]? I cannot spell yours, and you cannot spell mine.

[1] What is that hat? [2] *Est-ce.* [3] *nom.*

142. INFLECTION OF THE PAST DEFINITE OF VERBS.

J'aim-ai.	**Je reç-us.**
tu aim-as.	**tu reç-us.**
il aim-a.	**il reç-ut.**
nous aim-âmes.	**nous reç-ûmes.**
vous aim-âtes.	**vous reç-ûtes.**
ils aim-èrent.	**ils reç-urent.**
Je fin-is.	**Je rend-is.**
tu fin-is.	**tu rend-is.**
il fin-it.	**il rend-it.**
nous fin-îmes.	**nous rend-îmes.**
vous fin-îtes.	**vous rend-îtes.**
ils fin-irent.	**ils rend-irent.**

143. (*a*). The endings of the past definite are the same in Conjugations II. and IV. (*b*). There is only a difference of one letter in the endings of the plural in Conjugations I. and III.: Conjugation III. has the letter *u* where Conjugation I. has *a* (and *è*).

144. As to the meaning of the past definite, cf. § 52.

145. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le ciel, the sky.
le pommier, the apple-tree.
le feu, the fire.
le métier, the trade.
le temps, the weather.
le grand-père, the grandfather.
Édouard, Edward.
Henri, Henry.

Feminine.

la casquette, the cap.
la prairie, the meadow.
la pluie, the rain.
la forêt, the forest.
l'école, the school.

---

penser, to think.
envoyer, to send.
espérer, to hope.
courir, to run.
croire, to believe.
perdre, to lose.
il fait, it is (literally, it makes).
il pleut, it rains.
il pleuvait, it rained.
se promener, to take a walk.
je me promène, I take a walk.
je me promènerai, I shall take a walk.
pendant que, while.
quelques, some.
hier, yesterday.
avant-hier, day before yesterday.
aujourd'hui, to-day.
demain, to-morrow.
après-demain, day after to-morrow.

il fait,	it is	**beau**, good weather.
il fera,	it will be	**mauvais**, bad weather.
il faisait,	it was	**froid**, cold.
il ferait,	it would be	**chaud**, warm.
		clair, clear.
		du vent, windy.
		du soleil, sunny (the sun shines).

146. Verbs of the first conjugation which have a silent *e* in the penult (as *promener*), and have neither an *l* nor a *t* as the final consonant of the stem (cf. § 73), take a grave accent (`) over that *e* before a silent vowel. Ex.: *je me promène; amener*, "to lead, to bring;" *j'amène*, "I lead," etc.

147. Verbs having an "é *fermé*," as *espérer*, change that *é* into *è*, according to the preceding rule, except, however, in future and conditional.

148. Verbs in *yer* as *envoyer* change *y* into *i* before a silent *e*. Ex.: *j'envoie*.

149. EXERCISES.

1. Il fait froid. 2. Il faisait beau hier. 3. Il ne pleuvait pas beaucoup avant-hier. 4. Il pleuvait. 5. Il pleuvra demain, je crois. 6. J'espère qu'il fera beau après-demain. 7. Nous aurons de la pluie ce soir. 8. Nous avions du feu dans la chambre hier, parce qu'il faisait très froid. 9. S'il fait beau, le pommier aura beaucoup de pommes, mais il n'en aura pas s'il fait froid. 10. Le temps n'est-il pas beau ? 11. S'il pleut, nous ne pouvons pas nous promener. 12. S'il fait du vent, vous perdrez votre chapeau. 13. Il perdit sa casquette, parce qu'il faisait du vent. 14. Nous chantâmes une chanson. 15. Il demeura à Paris. 16. La dame me demanda où vous alliez pendant qu'il pleuvait. 17. Nous lui rendîmes son roman. 18. L'élève récita très bien sa leçon à l'école. 19. Edouard avait un bon métier. 20. Henri alla à l'école.

150. 1. I will show you my cap. 2. His grandfather sent him a cap. 3. He lost his red book. 4. It was good weather. 5. It was raining while we were at school. 6. The rain fell on the forest. 7. It is very cold to-day, but yesterday it was warm. 8. The meadow used to be green. 9. The sky is very clear, it is good weather. 10. I will call Henry. 11. I shall lose my cap. 12. Were you in the forest day before yesterday ? 13 We shall have no rain to-day, I believe. 14. It will rain to-morrow, I think. 15. I shall take a walk day after to-morrow. 16. What did he send you ? 17. We sent him the best apples from[1] our apple-trees.

[1] *de.*

---

151. VOCABULARY.

compter,	to count.	**le nombre,**	the number.
depuis,	from.	**la fois,**	the time (German, *das Mal*).
jusqu'à,	up to.		

onze,	11.	trente et un,	31.	soixante-douze,	72.
douze,	12.	trente-deux,	32.	quatre-vingts,	80.
treize,	13.	quarante,	40.	quatre-vingt-un,	81.
quatorze,	14.	quarante et un,	41.	quatre-vingt-deux,	82.
quinze,	15.	quarante-deux,	42.	quatre-vingt-dix,	90.
seize,	16.	cinquante,	50.	quatre-vingt-onze,	91.
dix-sept,	17.	cinquante et un,	51.	cent,	100.
dix-huit,	18.	cinquante-deux,	52.	deux cents,	200.
dix-neuf,	19.	soixante,	60.	deux cent vingt,	220.
vingt,	20.	soixante et un,	61.	mille,	1,000.
vingt et un,	21.	soixante-deux,	62.	deux mille,	2,000.
vingt-deux,	22.	soixante-dix,	70.	un million,	1,000,000.
trente,	30.	soixante et onze,	71.	deux millions,	2,000,000.

Combien font . . . ? How much make . . . ? or how much is . . . ?

152. CONVERSATION. — Compter.

1. Comptez, mademoiselle ! Que faites-vous ?
2. Je compte : un, deux, trois, etc.
1. Les Américains comptent-ils en français ?
2. Non, ils comptent en anglais.
1. Comment comptons-nous ici ?
2. Nous comptons en français.

Etc., etc.

1. Comptez depuis 10 jusqu'à 20 ! Que faites-vous ?
2. Je compte depuis 10 jusqu'à 20.
1. Depuis quel nombre comptez-vous ?
2. Je compte depuis dix.
1. Jusqu'à quel nombre comptez-vous ?
2. Je compte jusqu'à vingt.

Etc., etc.

1. Combien font dix et dix ?
2. Dix et dix font vingt.
1. Combien font 5 et 2 ?
2. Cinq et deux font sept.

Etc., etc.

1. Combien font deux fois trois ?
2. Deux fois trois font six.

1. Combien font trois fois quatre ?
2. Trois fois quatre font douze.
1. Combien font cent fois dix ?
2. Cent fois dix font mille.
1. Combien font cent fois mille ?
2. Cent fois mille font cent mille.
1. Combien font dix fois cent mille ?
2. Dix fois cent mille font un million.

Etc., etc.

1. Quel est ce nombre : 123,456,789 ?

2. Cent vingt-trois millions, quatre cent cinquante-six mille, sept cent quatre-vingt-neuf.

1. Quel est ce nombre : 234,567,891 ?

2. Deux cent trente-quatre millions, cinq cent soixante-sept mille, huit cent quatre-vingt-onze.

Etc., etc.

153. READING.

PROVERBE.

Le devoir avant le plaisir.
duty before pleasure
"Work before play."

154. CHATEAUBRIAND.

Le génie de Chateaubriand est composé des deux facultés les plus mobiles : l'imagination et la sensibilité. C'est pourquoi les influences les plus contraires ont un grand empire sur lui. Il suit[1] le mouvement de transition morale et politique du siècle, imite plus qu'il ne crée, et néanmoins[2] résume la révolution littéraire du romantisme. Son style est riche, souple, harmonieux. Il a écrit : "le génie du Christianisme," "les Martyrs," "les Natchez," etc., etc. Chateaubriand vint[3] en Amérique, et y resta[4] trois années. Né en 1768, il est mort en 1848.

[1] follows (from *suivre*). [2] nevertheless. [3] came. [4] remained.

CHAPTER X.

COMPOUND TENSES — VERBS CONJUGATED WITH "AVOIR."

155. Compound tenses are those which are formed with an auxiliary (*avoir* or *être*) and the past participle of the conjugated verb.

156. A great majority of French verbs — that is, all transitive verbs in the active voice, all impersonal, and many intransitive verbs — form their compound tenses with *avoir*.

157. How to form the past participle. — The past participle in Conjugation I. is formed by dropping the final *r* of the infinitive, and adding an acute accent (′) to the final *e*. Ex.: *chanter*, past participle, *chanté*. In Conjugation II. it is formed simply by dropping the final *r*. Ex.: *finir*, past part., *fini; dormir*, *dormi*. In Conjugations III. and IV. it is formed by changing the endings *oir*, *re*, of the infinitive into *u*. Ex.: *voir*, "to see," past part., *vu; pourvoir*, to provide, *pourvu; rendre*, *rendu; rompre*, *rompu*, etc. There are, however, many exceptions to this last rule. Ex.: *prendre*, past part., *pris; mettre*, p. p. *mis*, etc.

158. INFLECTION OF THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE VERBS

CHANTER, FINIR, RECEVOIR, ROMPRE, AVOIR, AND *ÊTRE.*

PAST PARTICIPLE.

chanté, fini, reçu, rompu, eu, and **été.**

INDICATIVE.

Past Indefinite.	**j'ai, tu as, il a,**	**nous avons, vous avez, ils ont.**	**chanté, fini, reçu, rompu, eu, été.**

Past Perfect. { j'eus, tu eus, il eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils eurent. } chanté, fini, reçu, rompu, eu, été.

Pluperfect. { j'avais, tu avais, etc. } chanté, fini, reçu, etc.

Future Perfect. { j'aurai, tu auras, etc. } chanté, fini, reçu, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Past. { j'aurais, tu aurais, etc. } chanté, fini, reçu, etc.

159. EXERCISE.

1. John has asked me (for) your letter. 2. We had been walking [1] in the street. 3. We shall have built our house. 4. We would have bought a hat. 5. We had found our friend. 6. Would you have seen me? 7. Shall we count the letters and the syllables of that word? 8. Several persons would have been here if [2] it [2] had not rained.[3] 9. He would have given them what [4] they had asked him (for). 10. Has the waiter brought you that cup of coffee? 11. Have you had your supper? [5] 12. I have finished my exercise.[6]

[1] use *marcher.* [3] *plu.* [5] have you supped?
[2] *s'il.* [4] *ce que.* [6] *exercice.*

160. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le professeur, the professor. **le canari,** the canary-bird.
le roi, the king. **le pont,** the bridge.
le jardinier, the gardener. **le canif,** the penknife.
le poële, the stove. **l'oiseau,** the bird.

Feminine.

la clef, the key. **l'aile,** the wing.
la bottine, the boot, the shoe. **l'arithmétique,** the arithmetic.
la jeune fille, the girl.

près de,	near.	**chez moi,**	at my home.
ouvert,	open.	" **toi,**	" thy "
peut-être,	perhaps.	" **lui,**	" his "
savoir,	to know.	" **elle,**	" her "
donc,	therefore, then, consequently, etc.	" **nous,**	" our "
		" **vous,**	" your "
fort,	strong.	" **eux,**	" their "
encore,	still, yet.	" **elles,**	
déjà,	already.		

161. *Donc* has no precise translation in English. We have given above a few of its meanings, but only long practice and observation will enable one to appreciate its exact signification.

162. EXERCISES.

1. Le professeur a donné des leçons. 2. L'oiseau avait chanté. 3. Il m'avait demandé des livres, mais je ne lui en avais pas donné. 4. Le jardinier a bâti un petit pont dans le jardin. 5. Peut-être avez-vous su[1] que le canari était mort? 6. La clef de la porte était sur la table. 7. Le livre du professeur est ouvert. 8. Vous avez été près de Paris, n'est-ce pas? 9. M'avez-vous montré le canif que votre oncle vous a donné? 10. Avez-vous bien dormi? 11. Mon ami vous a vu chez vous: vous n'étiez donc pas chez Monsieur Leblond? 12. Je vous ai envoyé une lettre. 13. Je n'étais pas chez moi quand vous avez ouvert la porte, mais ma tante était chez elle. 14. Quand il fait mauvais temps, nous restons chez nous. 15. Le poële est-il encore dans la chambre? Oui, il y est encore. 16. Cette jeune fille a donné des fleurs à son amie. 17. Que vous a envoyé Monsieur Leblond? Il m'a envoyé des livres.

[1] known.

163. 1. We have been very sick. 2. She had received my letter. 3. They will have returned those books. 4. He

would have sung. 5. They would have broken the key. 6. Have you eaten$_2$ well$_1$? 7. The horse has bitten my brother's leg. 8. M. Leblond had taken my penknife. 9. I have lost my hat in the forest. 10. She has sent me some flowers. 11. We had hoped to see you. 12. It was[1] cold yesterday. 13. Our professor is that girl's uncle. 14. Has she had a canary-bird? 15. The pupil has recited his lesson. 16. We have had three horses, and we have two$_2$ yet$_1$. 17. He has been at your home. 18. Is Mrs. Suft at home?

[1] has been.

---

164. VOCABULARY.

le jour,	the day.	**l'heure,** (*fem.*)	the hour.
le quart d'heure,	the quarter of an hour.	**la minute,**	the minute.
		la seconde,	the second.
la montre,	the watch.	**la demi-heure,**	the half-hour.
la pendule,	the clock.		

---

remonter, to wind. **Quelle heure est-il?** What time is it?

Il est, it is
- **midi,** noon.
- **minuit,** midnight.
- **une heure,** one o'clock.
- **deux heures,** two o'clock.
- **deux heures et quart,** a quarter-past two.
- **deux heures vingt,** twenty minutes past two.
- **deux heures et demie,** half-past two.
- **trois heures moins vingt,** twenty minutes of three.
- **trois heures moins le quart,** a quarter of three.
- **trois heures précises,** three o'clock sharp, exactly three o'clock.

165. CONVERSATION. — L'heure.

1. Qu'est-ce que c'est?
2. C'est une pendule.

1. Quelle heure est-il à cette pendule ?
2. Il est quatre heures dix.
1. Quelle heure est-il à votre montre ?
2. Il est quatre heures précises.

Etc., etc.

1. Combien de minutes y a-t-il dans une heure ?
2. Il y a soixante minutes. (Il y *en* a soixante.)
1. Combien de secondes y a-t-il dans une minute ?
2. Il y en a soixante.
1. Combien d'heures y a-t-il dans un jour ?
2. Il y en a vingt-quatre.
1. Combien de quarts d'heure y a-t-il dans une heure ?
2. Il y en a quatre.

Etc., etc.

1. Avez-vous une montre ?
2. Oui, j'en ai une.
3. Non, je n'en ai pas.
1. Qu'est-ce que je fais ?
2. Vous remontez votre montre.
1. Avec quoi remonte-t-on une pendule ?
2. On la remonte avec une clé.

Etc., etc.

166. READING.

PROVERBE.

L'habit ne fait pas le moine.
dress monk

"Dress does not make the monk."

167. L'ANE[1] ET SON MAITRE.[2]

Un âne trouva[3] par hasard une peau[4] de lion, et s'en[5] revêtit.[5] Il s'en[6] alla[6] dans les forêts, où il répandit[7] la terreur et la consternation. Tous les animaux[8] fuyaient[9]

devant lui. Son maître vint, et l'âne voulut [10] l'épouvanter [11] aussi. Mais le maître vit [12] quelque [13] chose [13] de [13] long [13] aux deux côtés [14] de la tête de l'animal, et lui dit: "Monsieur Baudet,[15] vos oreilles vous trahissent [16] et montrent que vous n'êtes qu'un âne."

Un sot [17] a toujours un endroit qui le [18] découvre [18] et le rend ridicule.

[1] donkey.
[2] master.
[3] found.
[4] skin.
[5] put it on.
[6] went away.
[7] spread.
[8] animals.
[9] fled.
[10] wished to.
[11] terrorize.
[12] saw.
[13] something long.
[14] sides.
[15] familiar name for donkey.
[16] betray.
[17] fool.
[18] shows him up.

168. SECOND REVIEW LESSON.

1. Translate: "smaller than," "as small as," "larger than," and give rules.

2. What are the comparative and superlative degrees of *bon?*

3. When is *tu* used?

4. When is *de* used after adverbs of quantity? Give two examples.

5. State the order of object-pronouns in a sentence: 1st, with one pronoun, and 2d, with two pronouns.

6. How is the future tense formed?

7. What is the meaning of the pronoun *en;* and how is it used?

8. Do possessive adjectives and pronouns take the number and gender of the possessed object, or that of the possessor?

9. Give the past definite tense of *appeler.*

10. What do you know of verbs having a silent *e* in the penult? Give one example.

11. Count, by tens, to one hundred, and then backwards.

12. How is the past participle formed in Conjugations I. and II.?

13. What verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir?*

14. Form the past indefinite and pluperfect of *trouver, bâtir, voir.*

169. EXERCISE.

1. What are the highest[1] mountains of America? 2. My arm is as large as yours, and larger than my[2] brother's.[2] 3. Is Victor Hugo a greater poet than Shakespeare? No, but he is as great. 4. How many fables has La Fontaine written? He [of them] has written many. 5. That ani-

mal put[3] his feet on the table, and broke[3] it. 6. Will you give me that spoon? Why do you ask me (for) it? Because I want it: give it to me, if[4] you[4] please.[4] 7. That gentleman has my hat and I have his. Shall I ask him (for) it? 8. Is this that gentleman's chair? No, it is not his, nor mine: it is yours. 9. Have you found the ink? What color is it? It is very black. 10. Would your aunt take a cup of tea? 11. Do you wish to go to your aunt's? 12. Have you eaten the bread that was on the table? 13. Was Alexandre Dumas a fabulist? No, he was a great novelist. 14. To-morrow we shall lead those animals into the meadow.

[1] high = *haut.*
[2] that (= *celui*) of my brother.
[3] past indefinite.
[4] "*s'il vous plaît.*"

CHAPTER XI.

Rules of Agreement of the Past Participle.

170. When conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, the past participle agrees with its *direct* object, if that object *precedes* the participle, but remains invariable when its direct object *follows* it, or when that object is the pronoun *en*.

Examples: *Les chaises que j'ai levées*, "the chairs I have lifted." ("I have lifted what?" "The chairs." The direct object is before.) *J'ai levé les chaises*, "I have lifted the chairs." (*Levé* remains invariable because "chairs" is after it.) *Avez-vous levé des chaises? Oui, j'en ai levé.* "Have you lifted some chairs? Yes, I have lifted some." (The object of *levé* is *en* in the answer, and therefore *levé* remains invariable.)

---

171. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le nom, the name.
le poisson, the fish.
le bras, the arm.
le pied, the foot.
le paletot, the coat.
le chien, the dog.
l'aquarium, the aquarium.
Paul, Paul.

Feminine.

la tête, the head.
la paire, the pair.

---

vendre, to sell.
avoir raison, to be right.
avoir tort, to be wrong.
on dit, one says, they say, people say.
il y avait, there was, or there were.
il y aura, there will be.
que, that, which, whom.
mais certainement, why, certainly.
là-bas, yonder.

172. EXERCISES.

1. Avez-vous vu les poissons? Oui, je les ai vus. 2. Avez-vous acheté des livres? Oui, j'en ai acheté. 3. Les fleurs que votre ami a achetées sont belles. 4. Votre père a-t-il remonté sa montre? Oui, il l'a remontée. 5. Monsieur et Madame Lefèvre ont-ils vu les poissons de l'aquarium? Non, ils ne les ont pas vus, mais mon ami les a vus et il les a beaucoup admirés. 7. Qui a apporté cette table? Ma sœur l'a apportée. 8. Les chansons que cette dame a chantées sont très belles. 9. J'ai acheté une paire de bottines chez Murat. 10. Avons-nous reçu des lettres? Oui, nous en avons reçu beaucoup. 11. Il y avait beaucoup d'oiseaux, dans la forêt où nous avons été. 12. L'élève a-t-il bien récité sa leçon? Oui, il l'a bien récitée, mais il n'en a pas bien prononcé tous les mots. 13. Ont-ils ouvert les portes? Non, ils ne les ont pas ouvertes. 14. On a ouvert les fenêtres, parce qu'il faisait très chaud.

173. 1. Has he shown you his books? Yes, he has [shown them to me]. 2. Have you taken[1] the pencil? No, I have not [taken it]. 3. Have you taken the pen? I have [taken it]. 4. Has he received your letters? No, he has not [received them]. 5. Has she sent you some pencils? Yes, she has [sent me some]. 6. I have lost my hat, but you have found it. 7. Have you found my shoes? No, I have not [found them]. 8. The letter which Paul wrote me was very long. 9. You are right. 10. Was he right or wrong? He was wrong. 11. They say [that] there will be many[2] people[2] in (at) Paris in 1900.

[1] *pris*, from *prendre*. [2] *beaucoup de monde*.

---

174. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le mois,	the month.	**février,**	February.
janvier,	January.	**mars,**	March.

avril,	April.	**septembre,**	September.
mai,	May.	**octobre,**	October.
juin,	June.	**novembre,**	November.
juillet,	July.	**décembre,**	December.
août,	August.		

lundi,	Monday.	**vendredi,**	Friday.
mardi,	Tuesday.	**samedi,**	Saturday.
mercredi,	Wednesday.	**dimanche,**	Sunday.
jeudi,	Thursday.		

Feminine.

l'année,	the year.	**la semaine,**	the week.
l'année bissextile,	the leap year.	**la date,**	the date.

quelques-uns,	some [ones].	**quatrième,**	fourth.
d'autres,	others.	**cinquième,**	fifth.
seulement,	only.	**sixième,**	sixth.
quel jour du mois?		**septième,**	seventh.
What day of the month?		**huitième,**	eighth.
quel jour de la semaine?		**neuvième,**	ninth.
What day of the week?		**dixième,**	tenth.
tous les quatre ans,		**onzième,**	eleventh.
Every four years.		**douzième,**	twelfth.
premier,	first.	*le* **dernier,** }	the last.
deuxième, (1)	second.	*la* **dernière,** }	
troisième, (1)	third.	cf. 344 ff.	

mil huit cent quatre-vingt-dix-neuf, (year) one thousand eight hundred and ninety-nine.

175. CONVERSATION. — L'année.

1. Combien de mois y a-t-il dans l'année?
2. Il y en a douze.
1. Comment s'appellent les douze mois de l'année?
2. Ils s'appellent: janvier, février, mars, etc. . . .
1. Comment s'appellent les jours de la semaine?
2. Ils s'appellent: lundi, mardi, mercredi, etc.

1. Combien y a-t-il de jours dans la semaine ?
2. Il y en a sept.
1. Quel est le premier mois de l'année ?
2. Le premier mois de l'année est janvier.
1. Quel est le deuxième mois de l'année ?
2. Le deuxième mois de l'année est février.

Etc., etc.

1. Combien de jours ont les mois ?
2. Quelques-uns en ont trente, d'autres en ont trente et un, et février en a seulement vingt-huit ou vingt-neuf.
1. Combien de jours a le mois de janvier ?
2. Il en a trente et un.

Etc., etc.

1. Combien de semaines y a-t-il dans l'année ?
2. Il y en a cinquante-deux.
1. Quel jour de la semaine est-ce aujourd'hui ?
2. Aujourd'hui c'est mardi.
1. Quel jour de la semaine était-ce hier ?
2. Hier c'était lundi.
1. Quel jour de la semaine sera-ce demain ?
2. Demain ce sera mercredi.

Etc., etc.

1. Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui ?
2. Aujourd'hui c'est le quatre janvier.
1. Quel jour du mois était-ce hier ?
2. Hier c'était le trois janvier.

Etc., etc.

1. Quelle est la date d'aujourd'hui ?
2. La date d'aujourd'hui est : Mardi, quatre janvier, 1899.

Etc., etc.

1. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans une année ?
2. Dans une année il y a 365 jours.
1. L'année a-t-elle toujours 365 jours ?
2. Non, tous les quatre ans l'année a 366 jours.

1. Comment s'appelle une année qui a 366 jours ?

2. Une année qui a 366 jours s'appelle "année bissextile."

1. Combien de jours a le mois de février quand l'année est bissextile ?

2. Il en a vingt-neuf.

Etc., etc.

176. READING.

PROVERBE.

Une hirondelle ne fait pas le printemps.
swallow spring

"One swallow does not make a summer."

177. MADAME DE SÉVIGNÉ.

La correspondance de cette illustre femme est un monument historique et littéraire. Elle se montre à nous comme un témoin [1] de son siècle, témoin sensible [2] et ému,[3] voyant [4] les choses avec les yeux [5] et les idées de son temps. Son style est remarquable par la vivacité naturelle, la spontanéité, la préoccupation d'exprimer [6] sa pensée [7] tout [8] entière.[8] Elle écrit avec liberté et souplesse, invente de nouvelles [9] expressions, enrichit le dictionnaire de mots nouveaux. La plupart [10] de ses lettres étaient adressées à Madame de Grignan, sa fille.

[1] witness.
[2] sensitive.
[3] full of emotion.
[4] seeing.
[5] eyes (plur. of *œil*).
[6] express.
[7] thought.
[8] entirely.
[9] new.
[10] most.

CHAPTER XII.

VERBS CONJUGATED WITH ÊTRE.

178. The most common verbs whose compound tenses are formed with *être* are:

(*a*). The following intransitive:

aller,	to go.	**venir,**	to come.
arriver,	to arrive.	**partir,**	to depart.
entrer,	to enter, to come in.	**sortir,**	to go out.
naître,	to be born.	**mourir,**	to die.
monter,	to get up on, to mount.	**descendre,**	to descend, to go down.
tomber,	to fall.		
éclore,	to open, bud, hatch.	**rester,**	to remain.
		passer,	to pass.

and their compounds, like *revenir*, "to return;" *devenir*, "to become;" *survenir*, "to happen;" *repartir*, "to go away again," etc., etc. (Some of these verbs, however, may be used *transitively*, in which case they are conjugated with *avoir*.)

(*b*). All reflexive verbs.

(*c*). All passive verbs.

179. The past participle conjugated with *être* agrees in gender and number with the *subject*.[1] Ex.: *Monsieur Leblond est arrivé*, "M. Leblond has arrived;" *Madame Leblond est arrivée*, "Mrs. Leblond has arrived;" *ces messieurs sont partis*, "these gentlemen have departed;" *ces dames sont parties*, "those ladies have departed."

[1] This does not always apply to reflexive verbs. (Cf. Part II., § 410).

180. INFLECTION OF THE COMPOUND TENSES OF A VERB CONJUGATED WITH *ÊTRE.*

VERB *ALLER.*

PAST INFINITIVE.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
être allé.	allé.

Past Indefinite.

Je suis allé, or **allée**, I have gone, or I went.
tu es allé, or **allée**.
il est allé.
elle est allée.
nous sommes allés, allées, or **allée**.
vous êtes allés, allées, allé, or **allée**.
ils sont allés.
elles sont allées.

Past Perfect.

Je fus allé, or **allée**, I had gone.
tu fus allé, or **allée**.
il fut allé.
elle fut allée.
nous fûmes allés, allées, or **allée**.
vous fûtes allés, allées, allé, or **allée**.
ils furent allés.
elles furent allées.

Pluperfect.

J'étais allé, I had gone, etc.

Future Perfect.

Je serai allé, I shall have gone, etc.

Past Conditional.

Je serais allé, I should or would have gone, etc.

181. EXERCISE.

1. John has gotten up on the table. 2. Alfred de Musset was born[1] eight years after Victor Hugo. 3. Has your sister gone out? 4. You had departed when she arrived.[1] 5. I would have gone to Paris. 6. Would the gardener

have become king? 7. They had already departed when we went[1] out.[1] 8. Her arithmetic fell[1] on the floor. 9. At what time did you come[1] in[1]? 10. We came[1] in[1] at twenty minutes of three.

[1] past indefinite.

182. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le pays, the country.
le révolver, **le pistolet**, the pistol.
le tableau, the picture.
le nid, the nest.
le voleur, the thief.
le compatriote, the countryman, citizen of the same country.
le paysan, the peasant, the farmer.
le dictionnaire, the dictionary.
le village, the village.
le billet, the ticket.
le poème, the poem.
l'œuf, the egg.

Feminine.

la montagne, the mountain.
la galerie, the gallery.
la feuille, the leaf.
la robe, the dress.
la patrie, the fatherland, the native country.

haut, high.
déjeuner, to breakfast.
par, through.
chaque soir, every night, evening.
hier soir, last night, yesterday evening.
hier matin, yesterday morning.
pas encore, not yet.
plusieurs, several.
probablement, probably.
pour, for, to, in order to.

183. EXERCISES.

1. Les feuilles des arbres sont tombées. 2. Nous sommes montés sur une haute montagne. 3. Quand vous êtes parti, vous avez acheté un revolver. 4. Quand les enfants seront sortis de la chambre, nous y entrerons. 5. Etes-vous entrée dans la galerie de tableaux, mademoiselle? 6. Hier soir mes amies sont venues chez nous. 7. Quand ma sœur sera arrivée, elle vous montrera les livres qu'elle a achetés.

8. La pluie est tombée sur le village. 9. Madame de Sévigné est née en 1626. 10. Hier matin je suis allé dans le village. 11. Nous sommes allés au théâtre, chaque soir. 12. Quand nous sommes allés au théâtre, en France nous en sommes sortis très tard. 13. Ce matin ces demoiselles sont descendues à neuf heures pour déjeuner. 14. Combien de jours êtes-vous restées à Berlin, mesdames? 15. Nous n'y sommes restées que trois jours: nous en sommes parties le mardi, et sommes allées à Paris.

184. 1. Has the train arrived? 2. No, it has not yet [arrived]. 3. The black dress has become green. 4. The birds have departed, and their nests have fallen from the trees. 5. Our (lady) friend has probably died. 6. The thief entered[1] the room through the window. 7. I came[1] down from my room at half-past nine this morning. 8. I would have arrived yesterday, but it rained[1] too[2] much.[2] 9. The leaves have become yellow. 10. You got[1] up[1] on[1] the chair. 11. Miss Leblond has not yet entered the room. 12. They went[1] to the forest yesterday. 13. The flowers fell[1] on the floor. 14. The peasants have returned from the village. 15. He has brought his revolver. 16. She went[1] to[3] your[3] home,[3] but did not find you. 17. Is he not a countryman of yours? 18. When did[1] you arrive[1] in this country? 19. Have you seen those pictures? 20. Yes, we saw them when we went[1] to Paris.

[1] past indefinite. [2] *trop.* [3] *chez-vous.*

---

185. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le printemps, the spring.
l'été, the summer.
l'automne, the autumn.
l'hiver, the winter.
le siècle, the century.

Feminine.

la saison, the season. **l'exposition,** the exposition.

chaque année, every year. **l'année dernière,** last year.
cette année-ci, this year. **commencer,** to begin.
l'année prochaine, next year.

186. CONVERSATION — Les Saisons.

1. Combien de saisons y a-t-il dans l'année ?
2. Il y en a quatre.
1. Chaque année a-t-elle un printemps ?
2. Oui, chaque année a un printemps.
1. Quelles sont les quatre saisons de l'année ?
2. Ce sont : le printemps, l'été, l'automne, et l'hiver.
1. Combien de mois y a-t-il dans une saison ?
2. Il y en a trois.
1. Quels sont les mois du printemps ?
2. Ce sont : mars, avril, et mai.

Etc., etc.

1. Quel jour commence le printemps ?
2. Le printemps commence le vingt et un mars.

Etc., etc.

1. Dans quelle saison sommes-nous ?
2. Nous sommes en hiver.
1. Dans quelle saison est le mois de juillet ?
2. Le mois de juillet est en été.
1. Dans quelle saison est le mois d'avril ?
2. Le mois d'avril est au printemps.

Etc., etc.

1. Dans quelle année sommes-nous ?
2. Nous sommes en 1899.
1. Dans quelle année sera l'exposition de Paris ?
2. L'exposition de Paris sera en 1900.
1. Dans quel siècle sommes-nous ?
2. Nous sommes dans le XIX^{e} siècle.

187. READING.

PROVERBE.

Aide-toi, le ciel t'aidera.

188. VOLTAIRE.

Voltaire (1694–1778) est l'écrivain le plus fécond et le plus universel du dix-huitième siècle. Il est inférieur, dans la poésie dramatique, à Corneille et à Racine, malgré [1] une facilité et une fécondité merveilleuses; il a le premier rang dans la poésie philosophique, et il est sans rival dans l'épître, le conte, l'épigramme. Le poème épique de la "Henriade" est une imitation. Ses livres d'histoire sont des chefs-[2] d'œuvre [2] de narration, d'élégance rapide et de simplicité. En philosophie, il est l'égal des plus grands penseurs [3] de son temps. Sa prose est essentiellement française: elle est vive, colorée, simple, et forte, élevée et noble sans effort, toujours modelée sur l'idée, le sentiment, la passion, le caprice de l'écrivain.

[1] in spite of. [2] masterpieces. [3] thinkers.

CHAPTER XIII.

Reflexive Verbs.

189. Reflexive verbs are those whose action is generated by, and falls upon the same person. Most transitive verbs can, therefore, be used as reflexive. But there are some verbs which are only conjugated as reflexive, as *se repentir*, "to repent," *se moquer*, "to mock," etc.

190. As to their conjugation, reflexive verbs differ from those of the transitive voice only in the fact that they are preceded by *two* pronouns (one subject, the other object) of the same person. Ex.: *Je me vante*, "I pride myself."

191. Those two pronouns are:

Singular.		Plural.	
1st person,	je me.	*1st person*,	nous nous.
2d person,	tu te.	*2d person*,	vous vous.
3d person,	il / elle — se.	*3d person*,	ils / elles — se.

192. Whenever *me*, *te*, and *se* precede a verb beginning with a vowel, the *e* is elided. Ex.: *il s'aime*, "he loves himself."

193. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs are always formed with the auxiliary *être*. Ex.: *je me* ***suis*** *vanté*, "I have prided myself." (The English use "have" instead. The French *être* has here the meaning of "have.")

194. INFLECTION OF A REFLEXIVE VERB.

SE VANTER.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	*Past.*
se vanter, to pride one's self, to boast.	**s'être vanté**, to have prided one's self.

PARTICIPLE.

Present.	*Past.*
se vantant, priding one's self.	**s'étant vanté**, having prided one's self.

INDICATIVE.

Present.
je me vante, I pride myself, I boast.
tu te vantes.
il (elle) se vante.
nous nous vantons.
vous vous vantez.
ils (elles) se vantent.

Imperfect.
je me vantais, I prided myself, was priding myself, etc.
tu te vantais, etc., etc.

Past Definite.
je me vantai, I prided myself, did pride myself, etc.
tu te vantas, etc., etc.

Past Indefinite.
je me suis vanté (or **vantée**), I have prided myself, etc.
tu t'es vanté (or **vantée**).
il s'est vanté.
elle s'est vantée.
nous nous sommes vantés (or **vantées**).
vous vous êtes vantés (or **vantées**).
ils se sont vantés.
elles se sont vantées.

Past Perfect.
je me fus vanté (or **vantée**), I had prided myself, etc., etc.

Pluperfect.
je m'étais vanté (or **vantée**), I had prided myself, etc., etc.

Future.
je me vanterai, I shall pride myself.
tu te vanteras, etc., etc.

Future Perfect.
je me serai vanté (or **vantée**), I shall have prided myself, etc., etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present. {**je me vanterais**, I should or would pride myself.
{**tu te vanterais**, etc., etc.

Past. {**je me serais vanté** (or **vantée**), I should or would have prided myself, etc., etc.

IMPERATIVE.

vante-toi, pride thyself.
vantons-nous, let us pride ourselves.
vantez-vous, pride yourself (yourselves).
ne te vante pas, do not pride thyself.
ne nous vantons pas, let us not pride ourselves.
ne vous vantez pas, do not pride yourself (yourselves).

195. EXERCISE.

1. He had boasted ten times upon [1] singing that German song before us. 2. Had you believed [2] him? Yes, I had [believed [2] him]. 3. It is not always wise to boast. 4. He prided himself upon [1] possessing the most beautiful picture of that gallery. 5. Those girls were priding themselves upon [1] having the most handsome dresses. 6. You had boasted of finding the thief. 7. Why do we boast? 8. That village prides itself upon [1] having given birth [3] to several great men. 9. Do not boast.

[1] *de* + infinitive. [2] *cru*. [3] *naissance*.

196. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le garçon,	the waiter.	**le savon,**	the soap.
l'anniversaire,	the birthday.	**le travail,**	the work.
le matin,	the morning.	**l'est,**	the east.
le soir,	the evening.	**l'ouest,**	the west.
le bois,	the wood, grove.	**le rossignol,**	the nightingale.
le soleil,	the sun.	**l'hôpital,**	the hospital.

Feminine.

la nuit, the night (also, at night).

se coucher, to lie down, to retire.
dormir, to sleep.
réveiller, to wake up (trans.).
se réveiller, to awake, wake up.
se lever, to get up, to rise.
se laver, to wash (one's self).
se peigner, to comb (one's hair).
se regarder (dans la glace), to look at one's self (in the mirror).
s'habiller, to dress.
se brosser, to brush (one's self, one's clothes, etc.).
se promener, to take a walk.
le soir, in the evening, at night.
le matin, in the morning.
pendant, during.
généralement, generally.
à quelle heure, at what time.
de bonne heure, early.
tard, late.
avec, with.

197. EXERCISES.

1. Le soleil se lève à l'est, et se couche à l'ouest. 2. Nous nous levons le matin et nous nous couchons le soir. 3. Pendant la nuit, nous dormons. 4. Où se lève le soleil? 5. Quand vous levez-vous? 6. Vous êtes-vous levée de bonne heure, ce matin, mademoiselle? 7. Non, je me suis levée tard. 8. A quelle heure vous couchez-vous, monsieur Leblond? 9. Hier soir je me suis couché de bonne heure, à neuf heures, mais généralement je me couche tard, à onze heures ou minuit. 10. Demain matin, nous nous lèverons à sept heures. 11. Le matin, après nous être levés, nous nous lavons, nous nous peignons et nous nous habillons. 12. Mademoiselle Lefèvre, vous êtes-vous regardée dans la glace? 13. Oui, je m'y suis regardée, pour me peigner. 14. Nous sommes allés nous promener dans le bois; mesdames Loison et Minvielle se sont promenées avec nous. 15. Avez-vous bien dormi? Non, nous avons très mal dormi, nous nous sommes réveillés trois fois pendant la nuit, et ce matin, le garçon nous a réveillés très de bonne heure.

198. 1. We did[1] not wake[1] up[1] very early this morning. 2. The waiter woke[1] me up[1] at six o'clock yesterday morning. 3. In summer, the sun rises early, but in winter, it

rises late. 4. At what time did [1] you retire,[1] last night? 5. We do not go to bed late in winter. 6. Your sister went [1] to the grove this morning; she took [1] a [1] walk [1] with Miss Leblond. 7. We remained [1] home, we did [1] not go [1] for [2] a [2] walk.[2] 8. With what do we wash? 9. We wash with soap and water. 10. What did [1] you do [1] this morning? 11. I got [1] up [1] at six o'clock, I washed [1] [myself] with soap and water, I combed [1] my [1] hair,[1] I went [1] down-stairs,[1] and took [1] a walk.[1] 12. We shall retire early to-night.

[1] past indefinite. [2] *nous promener.*

---

199. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le point cardinal, the cardinal point.
le nord, the north.
le sud, the south.
le nord-est, the north-east.
le nord-ouest, the north-west.
le sud-est, the south-east.
le sud-ouest, the south-west.
le marin, the sailor.
le golfe, the gulf.
le Canada, Canada.
le Mexique, Mexico.
l'océan Pacifique, Pacific Ocean.
l'océan Atlantique, Atlantic Ocean.
les Etats-Unis, United States.

Feminine.

la mer, the sea.
la boussole, the compass.

---

s'orienter, to locate one's self, find out one's position.
se trouver, to find one's self.
où se trouve, where is.
être obligé de, to be obliged to.
indiquer, to indicate, show.
par rapport à, compared to.
au { **nord**, north (in the north). **sud**, south (in the south).
à l' { **est**, east (in the east). **ouest**, west (in the west).

200. CONVERSATION. — Les points cardinaux.

1. Que sont obligés de faire les marins sur la mer?
2. Ils sont obligés de s'orienter.
1. Comment s'orientent-ils?
2. Ils s'orientent avec une boussole.

1. Qu'indique la boussole ?
2. Elle indique le nord.
1. Quels sont les quatre points cardinaux ?
2. Ce sont : le nord, l'est, le sud, et l'ouest.
1. Où se trouve le Canada, par rapport aux Etats-Unis ?
2. Il se trouve au nord.
1. Où se trouvent les Etats-Unis, par rapport au Canada ?
2. Ils se trouvent au sud.
1. Où se trouve l'océan Atlantique ?
2. Il se trouve à l'est des Etats-Unis.
1. Où se trouve le Mexique, par rapport aux Etats-Unis ?
2. Il se trouve au sud-ouest.

Etc., etc.

201. READING.

PROVERBE.

Plusieurs " peu " font un " beaucoup."

202. LES TROIS GRANDS MÉDECINS.[1]

Dumoulin, célèbre médecin, était [2] à [2] l'agonie,[2] environné de plusieurs médecins qui déploraient sa perte : " Messieurs," leur dit-il, " je laisse [3] après moi trois grands médecins." Chacun pensa être un des trois ; on insista pour qu'il les nommât : " Ce sont," répondit-il, " l'eau, l'exercice, et la diète."

[1] physicians. [2] was dying. [3] leave.

CHAPTER XIV.

Passive Voice of Verbs.

203. The passive voice of a verb is formed by placing its past participle after the verb *être* in all the tenses and persons. Ex.: *aimer*, past participle, *aimé;* present indicative of the passive voice, *je suis aimé;* imperfect, *j'étais aimé*, etc.

204. This sentence, *Ma sœur aime les fleurs* (*ma sœur*, subject — *aime*, verb — *les fleurs*, direct object), becomes, by using the passive form, *les fleurs sont aimées* **de** *ma sœur.* (*Les fleurs* is here subject, while *ma sœur* is the indirect object.) Since the direct object of a verb becomes the subject of the same in the passive form, only *transitive* verbs can have a passive form.

205. The indirect object of a passive verb is preceded by the prepositions *de* or *par; de* being used with verbs of sentiment, and *par* with others.

206. The past participle (cf. § 179) agrees in gender and number with the subject.

207. The passive voice is less frequently used in French than in English. It is replaced by other expressions, especially the two following:

(*a*). Form with *on: On a retrouvé la clef.*

(*b*). The reflexive form: *La clef s'est retrouvée.*

Both sentences meaning: "the key has been found."

208. INFLECTION OF THE VERB *AIMER*, "to love," IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	*Past.*
être **aimé**, to be loved.	**avoir été aimé**, to have been loved.

PARTICIPLE.

Present.	*Past.*
étant aimé, being loved.	**ayant été aimé**, having been loved.

INDICATIVE.

Present.	**je suis aimé** (or **aimée**), I am loved, etc.
Imperfect.	**j'étais aimé**, etc., I was loved, etc.
Past Definite.	**je fus aimé**, etc., I was loved, etc.
Past Indefinite.	**j'ai été aimé**, etc., I have been loved, etc.
Past Perfect.	**j'eus été aimé**, etc., I had been loved, etc.
Pluperfect.	**j'avais été aimé**, etc., I had been loved, etc.
Future.	**je serai aimé**, etc., I shall be loved, etc.
Future Perfect.	**j'aurai été aimé**, etc., I shall have been loved, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present.	**je serais aimé**, etc., I should (or would) be loved, etc.
Past.	**j'aurais été aimé**, etc., I should (or would) have been loved, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.	*2d person.*	**sois aimé**, etc., be thou loved.
Plural.	*1st person.*	**soyons aimés** (or **aimées**), let us be loved.
	2d person.	**soyez aimés** (**aimées**, **aimé**, or **aimée**), be loved.

---

209. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

l'orage, the storm.
le tailleur, the tailor.
l'épicier, the grocer.
le boucher, the butcher.
le commissionnaire, the messenger.
le soldat, the soldier.
le général, the general.
le compte, the bill.
le chemin de fer, the railroad.
les environs, the environs.
le beau-frère, the brother-in-law.
les parents, the parents, relatives.

Feminine.

la belle-mère, the mother-in-law.
la belle-sœur, the sister-in-law.
la bataille, the battle.
la négligence, the negligence.
la vallée, the valley.

---

gronder, to scold.
punir, to punish.
livrer, to deliver (fight).
raccommoder, to mend.
détruire, to destroy.
voler, to steal.
tuer, to kill.
payer, to pay.
régler, to settle (a bill).
améliorer, to improve.
corriger, to correct.
se corriger, to reform.
vaincre, to vanquish, overcome.
paresseux, lazy.

210. Adjectives in *eux* change *x* into *se* for the feminine, as, *heureux*, happy; fem., *heureuse*.

211. EXERCISES.

1. Louis est aimé de son maître. 2. Les enfants paresseux sont punis. 3. Marie sera punie par son professeur de musique, parce qu'elle a été très paresseuse. 4. Ma maison a été bâtie par mon beau-frère. 5. J'ai été grondé par ma mère. 6. La bataille de Sedan a été livrée le 2 Septembre, 1870. 7. Mes bottines ont été raccommodées. 8. Beaucoup de soldats ont été tués dans la bataille. 9. La ville a été détruite. 10. L'épicier a été payé. 11. Le compte du boucher a-t-il été réglé? 12. Par qui cette lettre a-t-elle été envoyée? 13. Le général a été vaincu. 14. Les soldats français ne seraient jamais vaincus s'ils étaient bien commandés. 15. Mes lunettes ont été volées, mais celles de ma belle-mère se sont retrouvées. 16. Si vous n'écrivez pas vos exercices, vous serez puni. 17. Ma bague a été perdue dans le chemin de fer. 18. Pourquoi seriez-vous grondée, mon amie? 19. Un village, dans les environs de Paris, a été détruit par l'orage. 20. Pourquoi ce soldat a-t-il été puni par le général? 21. Parce qu'il ne s'était pas corrigé de sa négligence.

212. Change the following sentences into the passive form:

1. Le professeur me gronde. 2. Je prends le crayon. 3. Les parents grondent leurs enfants. 4. L'Allemagne a vaincu la France en 1870, mais la France avait autrefois vaincu l'Allemagne. 5. Napoléon premier vainquit les allemands à Iéna en 1806. 6. Nous vous enverrons une lettre. 7. Le fils de mon ami payera le compte du boucher. 8. L'orage a détruit la maison de mes parents.

213. 1. We are loved by our parents. 2. The soldiers would have been vanquished. 3. The house will be destroyed. 4. He has been killed. 5. Are your spectacles lost? 6. By whom have these exercises been written? 7. Has the letter been received? 8. The grocer and the messenger have been paid. 9. The butcher's bill has not been settled. 10. My watch has been stolen. 11. A great battle will be fought to-morrow. 12. He has been called by his professor. 13. La Fontaine's fables are wonderfully[1] written. 14. My friend's sister-in-law was killed by the railroad.

[1] *merveilleusement.*

---

214. **VOCABULARY.**

Masculine.

le vin, the wine.
le repas, the meal.
le salon, the drawing-room.
le fumoir, the smoking-room.
l'appartement, the apartment.
le grenier, the attic.
le corridor, the hall.
les messieurs, the gentlemen.

Feminine.

la visite, the visit, the visitor.
la cave, the cellar.
la salle à manger, the dining-room.
la chambre à coucher, the bed-room.
la salle de bains, the bath-room.
la cuisine, the kitchen.
la cuisinière, the cook (woman).

recevoir, to receive.
fumer, to smoke.
dîner, to dine, to take dinner.
demeurer, to dwell.
différent, different, various.
la partie supérieure, the upper part.
la partie inférieure, the lower part.
faire la cuisine, to cook.

215. CONVERSATION. — La maison.

1. Où demeurons-nous ?
2. Nous demeurons dans une maison.
1. Comment s'appellent les différentes chambres d'une maison ?
2. Elles s'appellent : le salon, etc.
1. Que fait-on dans le salon ?
2. Dans le salon, on reçoit les visites.
1. Que fait-on dans la cuisine ?
2. On y fait la cuisine.

Etc., etc.

1. Où se trouve le grenier ?
2. Il se trouve à la partie supérieure de la maison.

Etc., etc.

1. Qui fait la cuisine ?
2. La cuisinière fait la cuisine.
1. Où la cuisinière fait-elle la cuisine ?
2. La cuisinière fait la cuisine dans la cuisine.

Etc., etc.

1. Où passe-t-on pour aller au salon ?
2. Pour aller au salon on passe dans le corridor.
1. Y a-t-il un fumoir dans votre maison ?
2. Oui, il y en a un.
1. Pour qui est le fumoir ?
2. Il est pour les messieurs.
1. Que font les messieurs au fumoir ?
2. Ils y fument.

Etc., etc.

1. Où met-on le vin, en France ?
2. En France, on met le vin dans la cave.
1. Comment s'appelle la chambre où nous dormons ?
2. Elle s'appelle la chambre à coucher.

Etc., etc.

216. READING.

PROVERBE.

La faim est le meilleur cuisinier.
"Hunger is the best sauce."

217. L'ESPÉRANCE.[1]

Il est dans le ciel une puissance[2] divine, compagne assidue de la religion et de la vertu. Elle nous aide à supporter la vie, s'embarque avec nous pour nous montrer le port dans les tempêtes, également douce et secourable[3] aux voyageurs célèbres, aux voyageurs inconnus.[4] Quoique[5] ses yeux soient[6] couverts d'un bandeau, ses regards pénètrent l'avenir.[7] . . . Rien n'approche du charme de sa voix, de la grâce de son sourire ;[8] plus on avance vers le tombeau,[9] plus elle se montre pure et brillante aux mortels consolés ; la Foi[10] et la Charité lui disent : "Ma sœur !" et elle se nomme l'Espérance.

CHATEAUBRIAND.

[1] hope. [3] helpful. [5] although. [7] the future. [9] tomb.
[2] power. [4] unknown. [6] subjunc. of *être*. [8] smile. [10] Faith.

CHAPTER XV.

THE VERB AFTER CONDITIONAL "SI," IF.

218. The verb which immediately follows *si*, "if," must be either in present indicative, imperfect, or pluperfect (the last being a compound of the imperfect).

219. The verb following *si* should be in the present to express probability or possibility of the action or state. Ex.: *si vous venez demain*, "if you come to-morrow." (Here the person who speaks means to say that your coming is probable, or possible.)

220. But when the condition expressed by the verb following *si* refers to some *improbable* or *impossible* state or action, that verb must be in the imperfect tense. Ex.: *si vous veniez demain*, "should you come to-morrow." (I consider your coming as doubtful.) *Si vous étiez dans la lune*, "if you were in the moon." (Here an impossibility is expressed.)

221. The verb by which the *consequence* of the *condition* is expressed must be in the *future*, or *present* indicative, or *imperative* in Case I. (§ 219), and in the *conditional* in Case II. (§ 220).

EXAMPLES.

CASE I. — *Probability or possibility of the state or action.*

CONDITION.	CONSEQUENCE.
Present.	*Future, Present, or Imperative.*
Si je ne suis pas malade,	je dînerai avec vous demain.
Si je vais à Paris,	j'achêterai une montre.
Si vous m'écrivez,	je vous répondrai.
S'il fait beau temps,	vous partirez ce soir.

CONDITION.	CONSEQUENCE.
Present.	*Future, Present, or Imperative.*
Si vous êtes heureux,	vous chantez.
Si vous recevez des visites,	vous êtes heureux.
Si vous êtes à Paris,	vous allez au théâtre.
Si vous n'êtes pas malade,	venez dîner avec moi demain.
Si je vous écris,	répondez-moi.
S'il fait beau temps,	partez ce soir.

CASE II. — *Improbability or impossibility of the state or action.*

CONDITION.	CONSEQUENCE.
Imperfect or Pluperfect.	*Conditional (Present or Past).*
Si je n'étais pas malade, (but either I am sick, or expect to be).	je dînerais avec vous ce soir.
Si j'allais à Paris, (but I am sure, or almost sure, of the negative).	j'achèterais une montre.
Si vous m'écriviez,	je vous répondrais.
S'il faisait beau temps,	vous partiriez ce soir.
S'il était allé en France,	il nous aurait écrit.
Si nous n'étions pas partis,	nous vous aurions fait une visite.

222. EXERCISE.

Translate the above examples into English.

223. Students must be *very careful* not to use either the future or the conditional in verbs immediately following *si*. They must *never* say, for instance: *Si j'irai à Paris, j'achèterai un chapeau*, etc.

224. After *si* meaning "whether" any tenses can be used.

225. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le citoyen, the citizen.
le parc, the park.
le médecin, the physician.
le ruban, the ribbon.
le pays, the country, the land.
le cordonnier, the shoemaker.
le roman, the novel.
l'ouvrage, the work, job.

Feminine.

la manufacture, the factory.
la voiture, the carriage.
la campagne, the country (in opposition to city).

---

aimez-vous? do you like?
j'aimerais, I should like.
passer, to hand, to pass.
s'il vous plaît, **je vous prie**, if you please.
à la campagne, in the country.
maintenant, now.
vieux (*masc.*), **vieille** (*fem.*), old.
mal, bad, badly.
facilement, easily.
difficilement, with difficulty, hardly.
quand, when.

226. EXERCISES.

1. Si le vieux cordonnier est diligent, il finira mes bottines ce soir. 2. Si vous étiez paresseux, votre ouvrage ne serait pas fini le samedi soir, et vous travailleriez le dimanche. 3. Si vous sortez quand il pleut, vous serez malade. 4. Si vous sortiez maintenant, je sortirais avec vous. 5. Si vous lisez ce roman, vous l'aimerez. 6. Si vous ne lisiez pas le journal, vous auriez le temps d'apprendre votre leçon. 7. Si vous étiez français, vous parleriez facilement le français, et vous parleriez mal l'anglais. 8. Si vous faites bien vos exercices, vous apprendrez vite le français. 9. S'il pleuvait demain, nous ne visiterions pas le parc. 10. S'il pleut, quand nous serons au parc, nous entrerons dans la maison de notre ami. 11. Si je vous donne un long exercice, vous serez obligé de travailler beaucoup. 12. Si vous n'écriviez pas votre exercice, je vous gronderais. 13. Si vous pensiez à vos amis, vous leur écririez. 14. Si vous me donnez votre adresse, je vous écrirai. 15. Si cette vieille femme n'était pas malade, elle ne serait pas à l'hôpital. 16. Si vous étiez vieux, vous marcheriez difficilement.

227. 1. I should like to go out walking[1] in the park. 2. Should you have my watch, you would return it to me. 3. If that young physician comes,[2] he will take dinner

with us. 4. Should you come to-morrow, you would take dinner with us. 5. If it rains to-night, we will not go out. 6. If it should rain, when we are at the park, we would take a carriage. 7. If you spoke French$_2$ well$_1$, you would not take lessons. 8. If you were an American, you would speak English$_2$ well$_1$. 9. If you had seen that old house, you would have liked it. 10. If this exercise was too long, you would not like it. 11. If you go out for a walk,[1] I will go with you.

[1] to go out for a walk, *aller se promener*. [2] *vient*.

---

228. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le temps,	the weather.	**le charbon,**	the coal.
le froid,	the cold.	**le bois,**	the wood.
le parapluie,	the umbrella.	**le vent,**	the wind.
le feu,	the fire.	**le poële,**	the stove.

Feminine.

la cheminée,	the chimney, the fireplace.	**la pluie,**	the rain.
la neige,	the snow.	**la chaleur,**	the heat.

---

	se mouiller,	to get wet.
	se sécher,	to get dry.
	se chauffer,	to warm one's self.
	s'approcher,	to get near, approach.
se chauffer	**les mains,**	to warm one's hands.
	les pieds,	to warm one's feet.
il, it	**pleut,**	rains.
	neige,	snows.
	fait froid,	is cold.
	fait chaud,	is warm.
	fait beau temps,	is good weather.
	fait mauvais temps,	is bad weather.
j'ai	**chaud,**	I am warm.
	froid,	I am cold.

quel temps fait-il? what kind of weather is it?

229. CONVERSATION. — Le temps.

1. Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui ?
2. Il fait mauvais temps.
1. Fait-il chaud aujourd'hui ?
2. Non, il ne fait pas chaud, il fait froid.
1. Fait-il froid en été ?
2. Non, en été il fait très chaud.
1. Pleut-il maintenant ?
2. Oui, il pleut et il neige.

Etc., etc.

1. Sortez-vous, s'il pleut ?
2. Oui, je sors si j'y suis obligé, mais je prends un parapluie.
1. Pourquoi prenez-vous un parapluie ?
2. Parce que si je ne prenais pas de parapluie, je me mouillerais.
1. Si vous vous mouillez, vous approchez-vous du feu pour vous sécher ?
2. Oui, si je me mouille, je m'approche du feu, pour me sécher.
1. Avec quoi fait-on du feu ?
2. On fait du feu avec du bois et du charbon.
1. Dans quoi fait-on le feu ?
2. On fait le feu dans une cheminée ou dans un poële.
1. Fait-il du vent maintenant ?
2. Oui, il fait beaucoup de vent.
1. Avez-vous froid ?
2. Non, j'ai chaud.
1. Avez-vous chaud aux mains ?
2. Non, j'ai froid aux mains et aux pieds.
1. Dans quelle saison fait-il froid ?
2. Il fait froid en hiver.
1. Dans quels mois fait-il chaud ?
2. Il fait chaud en juin, juillet, août, et septembre.

1. Neige-t-il, dans ces mois-là ?
2. Non, il fait trop chaud pour neiger.

Etc., etc.

230. READING.

PROVERBE.

Après la pluie, le beau temps.
"After the rain, sunshine."

231. LA FRANCE. — Constitution et Administration.

Aux termes de la Constitution de 1875, la France est une République constitutionnelle et unitaire; le pouvoir exécutif est exercé par un Président assisté de ministres responsables : le pouvoir [1] législatif par deux assemblées : le Sénat et la chambre des députés. Le territoire français est réparti,[2] au point de vue administratif, en 86 départements, sans compter "le territoire" de Belfort. Chaque département, qui a à sa tête un "préfet," est divisé en "arrondissements" ou "sous-préfectures," subdivisés à leur tour en "cantons" et "communes." Le préfet est assisté d'un conseil général, élu [3] au [3] suffrage universel. . . . Sous [4] le [4] rapport [4] de l'instruction publique, la France est divisée en 16 "académies," administrées par des "recteurs;" chaque académie a dans son "ressort" [5] plusieurs départements, où le recteur est représenté par un "inspecteur d'académie."

LAROUSSE.

[1] power. [2] divided. [3] elected by. [4] according to. [5] control.

232 THIRD REVIEW LESSON.

1. Give the rules of agreement of the past participle conjugated with *avoir*, and one example for each.

2. How are the ordinal numerals formed ?

3. What verbs are conjugated with *être ?*

4. Conjugate the past indefinite and future perfect of *venir.*

5. What are the names of the seasons ?

6. What are reflexive verbs, and how are they conjugated ?

7. What are the names of the cardinal points ?

8. How is the passive voice of verbs formed ?

9. Name the different parts of a house.

10. When is the verb following *si*, "if," in the present indicative ? When is it in the imperfect ? Give two examples for each rule.

11. How do you say, "it is cold," "warm," "good weather," "bad weather," etc.

12. Speak of the constitution and administration of France.

233. EXERCISE.

1. In what month did you go to Paris ? I went [there] in July and came back in October. 2. Two of the pictures of that gallery fell on the floor. 3. That Swede has returned to his native land. 4. The eggs fell from the nest. 5. February is the second month of the year, May is the fifth, and December the last. 6. You did not hear my sister when she entered the room ? Oh, yes, I heard her. 7. Have you bought my tickets ? No, we haven't [bought them]. 8. Those peasants arrived last night, and will probably remain at his house several days. 9. Did you

wake up last night when we retired? No, we did not [wake up], but this morning we heard you when you got up and went away. 10. That opera will not be played if he is not here. 11. Would you be scolded if you did not study your lesson? 12. My brother-in-law would have been killed if we had not come.

CHAPTER XVI.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

INFLECTION OF THIS MOOD.

234. Present. — The present subjunctive is formed with the stem of the present participle, to which the endings *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent,* are added.

235. In Conjugation III. the vowel of the stem is modified before a silent ending. When that vowel is *e,* it becomes *oi;* thus *recev* in *recevant* becomes *reçoiv* in the three persons singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive (as it does in the third person plural of the present indicative).

236. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Chant-**ant**, Finiss-**ant**, Recev-**ant**, Romp-**ant**.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

que je	chant-e,	That I may sing, etc.	finiss-e,	That I may finish, etc.
que tu	chant-es,		finiss-es,	
qu'il	chant-e,		finiss-e,	
que nous	chant-ions,		finiss-ions,	
que vous	chant-iez,		finiss-iez,	
qu'ils	chant-ent,		finiss-ent,	
que je	reçoiv-e,	That I may receive, etc.	romp-e,	That I may break, etc.
que tu	reçoiv-es,		romp-es,	
qu'il	reçoiv-e,		romp-e,	
que nous	recev-ions,		romp-ions,	
que vous	recev-iez,		romp-iez,	
qu'ils	reçoiv-ent,		romp-ent,	

237. EXERCISE.

Conjugate in the first person singular, and first, second, and third plural of the present subjunctive, the following verbs: *parler, trouver, acheter, jeter, appeler, bâtir, punir, apercevoir, entendre, se lever, se promener.*

---

238. Imperfect. — The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding *sse, sses, t, ssions, ssiez, ssent* to the vowel *a, i,* or *u,* which is the *first vowel* of the endings of the *past definite.* (In the third person singular, this vowel takes a circumflex accent.)

EXAMPLES.

je chant-a-i (*past definite*).
que je chant-a-sse (*imperfect subjunctive*).
je fin-i-s (*past definite*).
que je fin-i-sse (*imperfect subjunctive*).
Etc., etc.

239. INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

que je que tu qu'il	chant-a-sse, chant-a-sses, chant-â-t, chant-a-ssions, chant-a-ssiez, chant-a-ssent,	That I might sing, etc.	fin-i-sse, fin-i-sses, fin-î-t, fin-i-ssions, fin-i-ssiez, fin-i-ssent,	That I might finish, etc.
que nous que vous qu'ils	reç-u-sse, reç-u-sses, reç-û-t, reç-u-ssions, reç-u-ssiez, reç-u-ssent,	That I might receive, etc.	romp-i-sse, romp-i-sses, romp-î-t, romp-i-ssions, romp-i-ssiez, romp-i-ssent,	That I might break, etc.

240. EXERCISE.

Conjugate in the first and third person singular and second plural of imperfect subjunctive the following verbs: *montrer, bénir, guérir, faiblir, rougir, décevoir, percevoir, rendre.*

---

241. The past and pluperfect subjunctive are formed respectively with the present and imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliaries *avoir* and *être*, and the past participle of the verb conjugated.

242. INFLECTION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *AVOIR* AND *ÊTRE*.

PRESENT.

AVOIR.		*ÊTRE.*	
que j'aie,	That I may have, etc.	**que je sois,**	That I may be, etc.
que tu aies,		**que tu sois,**	
qu'il ait,		**qu'il soit,**	
que nous ayons,		**que nous soyons,**	
que vous ayez.		**que vous soyez,**	
qu'ils aient,		**qu'ils soient,**	

IMPERFECT.

que j'eusse,	That I might have, etc.	**que je fusse,**	That I might be, etc.
que tu eusses,		**que tu fusses,**	
qu'il eût,		**qu'il fût,**	
que nous eussions,		**que nous fussions,**	
que vous eussiez,		**que vous fussiez,**	
qu'ils eussent,		**qu'ils fussent,**	

243. The use of the subjunctive, in French, is somewhat difficult, on account of the many shades of meaning to which it may correspond. In a general way it can be said that the subjunctive expresses uncertainty, possibility, doubt, while the indicative asserts a thing as certain, positive, real. The subjunctive is the *subjective*, the indicative the *objective*, way of looking at things or expressing one's thoughts.

---

244. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le pont, the bridge.

Feminine.

la prune, the plum.
la pêche, the peach.
la fraise, the strawberry.
la noix, the walnut.
l'orange, the orange.

cher (*fem.*, **chère**), dear, expensive.
bon marché, cheap.
regretter,[1] to regret.
s'étonner,[1] to wonder, be surprised.
rougir,[1] to become red, blush, be ashamed.
craindre,[1] to fear.
se réjouir,[1] to rejoice.
trembler,[1] to tremble, fear.
être { **heureux**,[1] to be happy. **content**,[1] to be glad. **fâché**,[1] to be sorry. **surpris**,[1] to be surprised. **effrayé**,[1] to be frightened, to fear. **honteux**,[1] to be ashamed. **charmé**,[1] to be charmed.
si, so.

[1] Must be followed by the subjunctive.

245. EXERCISE.

1. Je regrette que vous soyez malade. 2. Il est fâché que nous partions ce soir. 3. Vous vous réjouissez que nous allions à Paris. 4. Ils s'étonnent que les oranges soient plus chères que les pêches. 5. Ne vous étonnez pas que je parte. 6. Elle craint qu'il ne[1] pleuve demain. 7. Quand le chemin de fer passe sur le pont, nous tremblons que le pont, ne[1] se rompe. 8. Je rougis que vous disiez cela.[2] 9. Je suis heureux que vous restiez chez nous. 10. Nous sommes surpris que vous lui écriviez. 11. Il est honteux que son beau-frère ait fait cela. 12. Ils sont charmés que les pêches soient mûres. 13. Je suis fâché que vous chantiez si mal. 14. N'êtes-vous pas heureux que les fraises soient si bon marché? 15. Tu es surpris que nous te donnions ce livre? 16. Elle était contente que je finisse mon travail. 17. Nous regrettions que les prunes fussent plus chères que les noix. 18. Ils sont charmés que vous alliez chez notre ami. 19. Nous sommes surpris que vous ayez froid aux pieds. 20. Pourquoi regrettait-il que vous fussiez partie?

[1] After verbs or expressions of FEAR, *ne* must be used before the verb in subjunctive. This *ne* is not a part of the negative *ne . . . pas;* it is a remainder from the Latin *ne* in a sentence like this: "*timeo ne veniat*," "I am afraid *lest* he may come." [2] that.

246. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le trottoir, the sidewalk.
le magasin, the store.
le théâtre, the theater.
le faubourg, the suburb.
le marchand, the merchant.
le numéro, the number.
le timbre, the postage-stamp.
le palais, the palace.
l'Elysée, the "Elysée" (the Executive Mansion in France).
le président, the president.
l'asphalte, the asphalt.
le pavé, the pavement.
le bureau de tabac, the tobacco store.

Feminine.

la poste, the post-office.
la rue, the street.
la capitale, the capital.
la boîte aux lettres, the letter-box.
la ville principale, the principal city.

Paris,	Paris.	**Bordeaux.**	
Lyon,	Lyons.	**Nantes.**	
Marseille,	Marseilles.	**Orléans.**	
Montpellier,	Montpellier.	**Le Havre**	
Toulouse,	Toulouse.	**Rouen.**	

---

paver,	to pave.	**mouvementé,**	animated.
vendre,	to sell.	**de toute sorte,**	of every kind.
six fois,	six times.	**quelquefois,**	sometimes.
vis-à-vis, / **en face,**	opposite.	**il faut,**	it is necessary.
		au-dessus de,	above.

247. CONVERSATION. — La ville.

1. Dans quelle rue demeurez-vous ?
2. Je demeure dans la rue de Rivoli.
1. A quel numéro demeurez-vous ?
2. Je demeure au numéro 62.
1. Votre rue est-elle pavée ?
2. Oui, elle est pavée, et elle a d'excellents trottoirs.
1. Où mettez-vous les lettres que vous voulez envoyer ?
2. Je les mets à la poste, ou dans une boîte aux lettres.
1. Combien de fois par jour vient le facteur ?
2. Il vient six fois par jour.

1. Le facteur vend-il des timbres ?

2. Non, il n'en vend pas : il faut acheter les timbres à la poste, ou dans un bureau de tabac.

1. Comment s'appelle la rue principale, dans votre ville ?

2. Elle s'appelle "rue Victor Hugo."

1. Où demeurent les marchands ?

2. Ils demeurent quelquefois au-dessus de leur magasin, quelquefois dans les faubourgs.

1. Où demeure le président de la République française ?

2. Il demeure dans le palais de l'Elysée.

1. Quelle est la capitale de la France ?

2. La capitale de la France est Paris.

1. Quelles sont les villes principales de la France ?

2. Ce sont : Lyon, Marseille, Bordeaux, Montpellier, etc.

248. READING.

PROVERBE.

Faire et dire sont deux.

"It's one thing to say a thing, and another to do it."

249. EPIGRAMME.

Un député voulant faire un mauvais compliment à un de ses collègues, lui disait : "Enfin, monsieur, vous n'avez point[1] encore ouvert la bouche dans la Chambre." — "Vous[2] vous[2] trompez,[2]" répondit celui-ci, "car toutes les fois que vous avez parlé, je[3] n'[3] ai[3] pu[3] m'[3] empêcher[3] de[3] bâiller.[4]"

[1] = *pas*. [2] you are mistaken. [3] I could not help. [4] (to) yawn.

CHAPTER XVII.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*).

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

250. The subjunctive is used, as we have seen (cf. §§ 244, 245), after verbs marking a sentiment of regret, fear, joy, shame, etc. It must also be used:

(*a*). After a verb or expression of will or command (as *vouloir*, *ordonner*, etc.), and after the following expressions, marking the object or aim of the will or command:

afin que, so that.
pour que, in order that.
de manière que, } so that.
de sorte que, }

Still, after *de manière que* and *de sorte que*, the *indicative* should be used whenever these expressions refer *not* to an object to be reached, but to a *result already acquired.*

Ex.: *Faites les choses de manière que tout le monde soit content*, "Do things so that every one will be pleased." (Here, your *aim* in doing those things is to please every one.) But: *Il a agi de telle sorte, que personne n'a pu le critiquer*, "He has acted so that nobody could criticise him." (In this case it is the *result* of the action that we refer to.)

(*b*). After impersonal expressions and verbs similar to the following:

il est juste, it is just.
il est bon, it is good.
il convient, it is convenient, proper, it behooves.
il est important, } it is impor-
il importe, } tant.
il faut, } it is neces-
il est nécessaire, } sary.
il semble, it seems, it appears.

Ex.: *Il est bon que nous sortions*
Il est important que vous alliez à Paris
Il faut qu'il pleuve.

251. EXERCISE.

1. Voulez-vous que je sorte de cette chambre? 2. Ordonnez qu'il entre. 3. Il veut que nous sachions[1] notre leçon. 4. On nous donne des exercices à lire pour que nous apprenions le subjonctif. 5. Faites entrer votre frère, afin qu'il n'ait pas froid. 6. Fermez la porte afin que le froid ne puisse[2] pas entrer. 7. Pourquoi voulez-vous que nous allions en Amérique? 8. Est-il juste que cet élève soit puni? 9. Il convient que nous restions ici. 10. Il est nécessaire que vous lui parliez aujourd'hui.

[1] from *savoir*. [2] from *pouvoir*.

252. The subjunctive must be used also:

(*a*). In the dependent clause, when the verb of the principal clause is in the negative form.

Ex.: *Je ne crois pas que vous disiez cela.*

(*b*). After a superlative, or an expression having the meaning of a superlative, as *le plus*, *le moins*, *le seul*, *le mieux*, etc.

Ex.: *L'homme est le seul être qui ait une âme.*

---

253. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le déjeuner, the breakfast. **Charles**, Charles.
le tableau, the picture. **Richard**, Richard.

Feminine.

la malle, the trunk. **la pièce**, the play, the piece.
la comédie, the comedy. **l'ombrelle**, the parasol.

---

vouloir,	to wish, will, want.	**défendre,**	to forbid.
exiger,	to exact, demand.	**empêcher,**	to prevent.
ordonner,	to order.	**demander,**	to ask.
commander,	to command.	**ensemble,**	together.
dire,	to say.	**de l'argent,**	some money.
désirer,	to wish, desire.	**parfait,**	perfect.

254. EXERCISES.

1. Le professeur veut que nous parlions français. 2. Les parents exigent que leurs enfants soient sages. 3. Le maître ordonne que vous sortiez de la chambre. 4. Le général ordonne que le soldat soit puni. 5. Je demandais qu'on me donnât du pain. 6. Dites à monsieur Leblond qu'il aille à Rouen. 7. Vous désiriez que ma sœur reçût sa montre hier matin. 8. Notre père défend que nous portions une ombrelle. 9. Le parapluie empêche que nous nous mouillions. 10. Vous venez afin que je vous donne ce tableau. 11. Richard reste chez lui afin que Charles puisse [1] le voir. 12. Restez ici, pour que nous déjeunions ensemble. 13. Je lui donnerai de l'argent, de manière qu'il ne perde rien. 14. Travaillez bien, de sorte que votre maître soit content de vous. 15. Est-il juste que je punisse cet enfant? 16. Est-il nécessaire que vous lisiez ce livre? 17. Il est très important que j'aille à New-York demain. 18. Il faut que vous parliez à ma sœur. 19. Il est nécessaire que vous vendiez cette maison. 20. Il importe que nous arrivions vendredi à Boulogne. 21. Il convient que vous sachiez [2] bien votre leçon. 22. Il tremble que vous ne soyez malade. 23. Je ne crois pas que monsieur Leblond soit chez lui. 24. Je ne crois pas que vous veniez à Mâcon. 25. Je ne dis pas que vous soyez parfait. 26. C'est le seul livre de Lamartine que nous ayons. 27. C'est la meilleure plume que vous puissiez [1] demander. 28. C'est le mieux que nous puissions [1] faire. 29. Ce train était le seul qui partît pour Marseille.

[1] subjunctive of *pouvoir*. [2] subjunctive of *savoir*, "to know."

255. 1. He wanted me to be there. 2. Richard wants me to give him that umbrella. 3. I want you to bring my trunk to my room. 4. He wants us to go to the theater, in order that we may hear that play. 5. I forbid that you go there. 6. We ask that they play that comedy.

---

256. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le maire, the mayor.
le maquereau, the mackerel.
le saumon, the salmon.
le marché, the market.
l'édifice, the edifice.
l'hôtel, the hotel.
le poisson, the fish.
les légumes, the vegetables.
les fruits, the fruits.
le conseil municipal, the council.

Feminine.

la mairie, the town hall.
l'église, the church.
la truite, the trout.
la réunion, the reunion.
la volaille, the poultry.
la pièce, the piece, apiece.
la place, the square.

---

public (*masc.*), **publique** (*fem.*), public.

257. CONVERSATION. — La ville.

1. Etes-vous allé ce matin au marché ?
2. Oui, j'y suis allé de bonne heure.
1. Que vend-on au marché ?
2. On y vend des légumes, de la volaille, du poisson, des fruits, et des œufs.
1. Y a-t-il des arbres sur la place du marché ?
2. Non, il n'y en a pas ; aussi y fait-il très chaud, en été.
1. Combien coûtent ces truites ?
2. Elles coûtent un franc la pièce.
1. Quels édifices publics y a-t-il sur la place du marché ?
2. On y voit la mairie, le théâtre, et l'église.
1. Où est le maire maintenant ?

2. Il est à la mairie, où il préside à une réunion du conseil municipal.

1. Quel est le meilleur hôtel de la ville ?

2. C'est l'hôtel de "Lyon."

1. Quels sont les poissons que vous préférez ?

2. Les poissons que je préfère sont: le saumon, la truite et le maquereau.

Etc., etc.

258. READING.

PROVERBE.

Trop de cuisiniers gâtent la sauce.
"Too many cooks spoil the broth."

259. UN SOT[1] COMPLIMENT.

Un financier louait[2] un jour beaucoup M^me^ Denis, nièce de Voltaire, de la façon[3] dont elle venait[4] de[4] jouer[4] Zaïre. "Pour réussir[5] dans un tel[6] rôle,[7]" dit, par modestie, cette femme[8] d'[8] esprit,[8] "il faudrait[9] être jeune et belle." — "Ah! madame," reprit[10] naïvement le sot complimenteur, "vous êtes bien la preuve[11] du contraire."

[1] dull. [3] way, manner. [5] succeed. [7] part.
[2] praised. [4] had just played. [6] such. [8] woman of wit.
[9] condit. of *falloir*, "to be necessary." [10] replied. [11] proof.

CHAPTER XVIII.

SUBJUNCTIVE (Continued).

260. We must always use the subjunctive after any of the following phrases:

à moins que, unless [that].
avant que, before [that].
bien que, although.
de peur que, for fear [that].
jusqu'à ce que, until [that].
loin que, far from.
pour peu que, however little.
pourvu que, provided [that].
quel . . . que {whatever [that]. / whoever [that].
quelque . . . que, however [that].
qui que, whoever [that].
quoi que, whatever [that].
sans que, without [that].
soit que . . . soit que, whether . . . or [that].
supposé que, suppose [that].

that is, after phrases marking concession, condition, fear, doubt, anteriority, etc.

Ex.: *Avant que vous eussiez parlé, j'avais pensé cela. Pourvu que vous puissiez marcher, vous irez à la campagne.*

261. USE OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

(*a*). The *present* and *past* subjunctive are to be used, in subordinate clauses, when the verb of the principal clause is in the *present* or *future* indicative. (The *present* subjunctive refers to an action in the *present* or *future*, the *past* subjunctive to a past action.)

EXAMPLES.

Notre père **défend** *que nous* **portions** *une ombrelle. Quand nous serons chez nous, nous* **aimerons** *que vous* **veniez** *nous voir.*

Je **suis** *fâché que vous* **ayez dit** *cela.*
Vous **regretterez** *que je* **sois parti.**

(*b*). When the verb of the *principal clause* is in the *past* or in the *conditional*, the verb of the *subordinate clause* must be either in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive.

Examples.

***Était-il** juste qu'il* **punît** *cet enfant?*
***Aurait-il été** bon que vous* **fussiez parti?**

262. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are seldom used, as their endings are too long, and lack euphony. It is preferable to change the order of the sentence, and substitute another construction.

263. When the verb of a subordinate clause beginning with *que* has the same subject as that of the principal clause, the infinitive, with or without a preposition (often with *de*), is generally used instead of the subjunctive.

Ex.: Instead of

Je veux que j'aille à New-York;
Nous sommes surpris que **nous** *ayons froid;*

we must say:

Je veux aller à New-York;
Nous sommes surpris **d'***avoir froid.*

---

264. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le peintre, the painter. **le chemin**, the way, the road.
l'artiste, the artist. **le voyage**, the journey.

Feminine.

la tentation, the temptation. **la gloire**, the glory.
la vie, the life. **l'histoire**, the history, the story.
la raison, the reason. **l'adversité**, the adversity.

---

remercier, to thank.
succomber, to succumb.
veiller, to watch, to wake.
avertir, to inform, to warn.
parvenir, to arrive, succeed.
gagner, to gain.
connaître, to know.
prier, to pray.
pardonner, to forgive, pardon.
insister, to insist.
comprendre, to understand.
éviter, to avoid.
fort, strong.
difficile, difficult.
généreux, generous.
tout, all, all things.

265. EXERCISES.

1. A moins que vous ne soyez un grand peintre, vous trouverez la vie d'artiste difficile. 2. Avant que je ne vinsse[1] en Amérique, vous ne me connaissiez pas. 3. Bien que vous ayez fait trois fois ce voyage, vous ne connaissez pas bien le chemin. 4. "Veillez et priez de peur que vous ne succombiez à la tentation." 5. Restez ici jusqu'à ce que je revienne.[2] 6. L'adversité, loin qu'elle soit un mal, est souvent un remède. 7. Pour peu que vous connaissiez mon ami, vous l'aimerez. 8. Je recevrai votre lettre pourvu que vous l'envoyiez ce soir à cinq heures. 9. Quelle que soit la raison que vous me donniez, je ne vous croirai pas. 10. Quelque généreux qu'il soit, il ne vous pardonnera pas. 11. Quelque forts que nous soyons, nous n'éviterons pas la mort. 12. Qui que vous soyez, parlez! 13. Quoi que vous disiez, vous avez tort. 14. Je parlerai de vous à mon ami sans que ma sœur en[3] sache[4] rien. 15. "Soit que vous mangiez, soit que vous buviez, faites tout pour la gloire de Dieu." 16. Supposé qu'il fasse[5] froid demain, sortirez-vous? 17. Oui, nous sortirons, soit qu'il fasse froid, soit qu'il fasse chaud. 18. Pour peu que vous insistiez, je ferai ce que vous me demandez. 19. Prenez ma montre, de peur que je ne la perde. 20. J'irai[6] vous voir, bien que je parte ce soir. 21. Nous finirons notre ouvrage, sans que vous nous le disiez. 22. Pour peu qu'il pleuve, nous resterons chez nous. 23. Loin que vous regrettiez

d'avoir fait ce voyage, vous me remercierez de vous avoir donné l'idée de le faire.

[1] imp. subj. of *venir*.
[2] pres. subj. of *revenir*.
[3] about it.
[4] pres. subj. of *savoir*, "to know."
[5] pres. subj. of *faire*.
[6] fut. indic. of *aller*.

266. 1. Unless you have been in France, you cannot understand the French. 2. Although you speak English fluently, there are many words that you do not know. 3. Provided [that] you write to my friend, you will receive that book. 4. Do not speak of Paris before you know it well. 5. Forgive your enemies, for fear that God will not forgive you. 6. However strong you may be, avoid temptation. 7. Whatever you do, do it well. 8. I will do that, without your telling me.

---

267. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le train, the train.
le rapide, the "flyer."
l'express, the express-train.
le billet, the ticket.
l'employé, the employee.
le chef de gare, the station-master.
le prix, the price.
le wagon, the car.

Feminine.

la gare, the station.
la salle d'attente, the waiting-room.
la malle, the trunk.
la diligence, the stage-coach.
la première, **la deuxième**, **la troisième** } **classe**, 1st, 2d, 3d } class.

---

s'arrêter, to stop.
voyager, to travel.
marcher, **aller**, } to run (for a train).
siffler, to whistle.
attendre, to wait.
autrefois, formerly, of old.
de nos jours, nowadays.
gens, people.
élevé, high (expensive).

268. CONVERSATION. — Le voyage.

1. Aimez-vous à voyager ?
2. Oui, j'aime beaucoup à voyager.

1. Comment voyageait-on, autrefois ?
2. On voyageait en diligence.
1. Comment voyage-t-on, de nos jours ?
2. De nos jours, on voyage en chemin de fer.
1. Où prend-on le train ?
2. On prend le train à la gare.
1. Que fait le train, en entrant en gare ?
2. En entrant en gare, le train s'arrête.
1. Que fait le train en approchant d'une gare ?
2. En approchant d'une gare, le train siffle.
1. Que fait-on, avant de monter en wagon ?
2. Avant de monter en wagon, on prend son billet.
1. Qui vous vend le billet ?
2. L'employé de la gare, nous vend le billet.
1. Comment s'appelle le directeur d'une gare ?
2. Il s'appelle le "chef de gare."
1. Que prenez-vous avec vous, quand vous voyagez ?
2. Je prends une malle.
1. Où attendez-vous l'arrivée du train ?
2. Je l'attends dans la salle d'attente.
1. Combien de sortes de train y a-t-il en France ?
2. Il y en a trois sortes principales, qui sont : le train omnibus, le train express, et le train rapide.
1. Quel train va le plus vite ?
2. Le train rapide.
1. Quel train va le plus lentement ?
2. Le train omnibus.
1. Combien de classes de wagons y a-t-il en France ?
2. Il y en a trois classes : ceux de première, ceux de deuxième, et ceux de troisième classe.
1. Voyage-t-on beaucoup en première classe en France ?
2. Non, en France, on ne voyage pas souvent en 1ère classe, parce que les prix en sont trop élevés.

269. READING.

PROVERBE.

Qui veut voyager loin, ménage sa monture.
whoever far spares his horse.

270. LA RÉPUBLIQUE FRANÇAISE.

La république a été trois fois proclamée en France. La première république, proclamée le 21 septembre, 1792, dura jusqu'au 18 mai, 1804, époque où elle fut remplacée par l'Empire. Pendant cette période, on vit[1] se succéder la Convention (21 septembre, 1792), le Directoire (26 octobre, 1795), et le Consulat (11 novembre, 1799).

Après la chute[2] de Louis-Philippe, la République fut de[3] nouveau[3] proclamée, le 4 mai, 1848 ; mais elle n'eut qu'une durée éphémère. A[4] la[4] suite[4] du coup d'Etat du 2 décembre, 1851, Louis Bonaparte se fit[5] nommer président pour dix ans, puis,[6] le premier décembre, 1852, empereur des Français.

Le 4 septembre, 1870, à la nouvelle de la capitulation de Sedan, la République fut établie en France pour la troisième fois ; elle a eu pour présidents : Thiers, MacMahon, Jules Grévy, Sadi Carnot, Casimir Périer, Félix Faure, et Emile Loubet.

LAROUSSE.

[1] past def. of *voir*.
[2] fall.
[3] again.
[4] after.
[5] past def. of *faire*.
[6] then.

CHAPTER XIX.

General Remarks Upon the Inflection of the Verbs of Conjugations I. and II.

271. **Conjugation I.** — As it has already been said, a great majority of French verbs belong to this conjugation, in which are found only two irregular verbs (*aller* and *envoyer*).

272. The following remarks must be remembered in conjugating the verbs of this conjugation.

(*a*). Verbs ending in *cer* take a cedilla (ç) under the *c* before the vowels *a*, *o*.

Ex.: *effacer*, "to erase," *j'effaçais*, "I erased."

(*b*). Verbs in *ger* take a silent *e* after the *g* before the vowels *a*, *o*.

Ex.: *Nager*, "to swim," *nous nageons*.

Both the cedilla and the *e* are to preserve the pronunciation of the stem.

(*c*). Verbs in *eler* and *eter* double the *l* or *t* before a silent *e*.

Ex.: *Appeler, j'appelle ; jeter*, "to throw," *je jette*.

(*d*). Other verbs having a silent *e* in the penult; the verbs *acheter*, *geler*, *peler*, *racheter*, and a few others, change that silent *e* into *è* (e *ouvert*) if the syllable which follows the last consonant of the stem (*t*, *l*, etc.) is silent.

Ex.: *acheter*, "to buy," *j'achète*.

(*e*). Verbs having an *é* (e *fermé*) in the penult, modify that *é* in the same way (as in *d* above), except, however, in the future and conditional.

Ex.: *répéter*, "to repeat," *je repète, je repéterai.*

(*f*). Verbs in *yer* change *y* into *i* before a silent *e*.

Ex.: *envoyer*, "to send," *j'envoie.*

Verbs in *ayer* can preserve the *y* or take *i*.

Ex.: *payer*, "to pay," *je paye, je payerai*, or *je paie, je paierai.* (The French Academy prefers *je paye*, etc.)

273. Conjugation II. — To this conjugation belong the verbs which are conjugated like *finir* — these are called "regular" — and others which differ from *finir* in the fact that they do not take the syllable *iss* (*finissant*) and are conjugated according to the forms of Conjugation IV. To this class belong *dormir*, "to sleep"; *servir*, "to serve"; *partir*, "to go away," etc. (See the list of irregular verbs, §301.)

---

274. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le fardeau,	the burden.	**le cocher,**	the coachman.
le juge,	the judge.	**le mot,**	the word.
le bâton,	the stick.	**le domestique,**	the servant.
le paresseux,	the lazy man.	**l'âne,**	the donkey.
le semeur,	the sower.		

Feminine.

la fortune,	the fortune.	**la benzine,**	the benzine.
la glace,	the ice.	**la semence,**	the seed.
la crème,	the cream.	**la bride,**	the bridle.

---

posséder,	to possess.	**avancer,**	to go forward.
ployer,	to bend.	**effacer,**	to erase.
juger,	to judge.	**manger,**	to eat.
jeter,	to throw.	**partir,**	to go away.
geler,	to freeze.	**servir,**	to serve, wait on.
nettoyer,	to clean.	**se servir,**	to help one's self.
s'ennuyer,	to be bored.	**se servir de,**	to use.
semer,	to sow.	**porter,**	to carry.
mener,	to lead.	**lentement,**	slowly.

275. EXERCISES.

1. Je ne possède rien. 2. Je ne veux pas qu'il possède ma maison. 3. L'âne que vous voyez dans la rue ploie sous le fardeau qu'il porte. 4. Il voulait que le juge jugeât son domestique. 5. Je jette un bâton sur la glace. 6. Quand il fait très froid, l'eau gèle. 7. Quand on ne travaille pas, on s'ennuie. 8. Le paresseux s'ennuie toujours. 9. Je veux que mon domestique nettoie mes bottines. 10. Le semeur est l'homme qui sème la semence. 11. Nous voulons que notre cocher mène le cheval par la bride. 12. Le train avançait lentement parce qu'il approchait du pont et de la gare. 13. On mangeait beaucoup de crème à la glace, l'été dernier. 14. Il part demain. 15. Voulez-vous que je parte? 16. Vous défendez qu'il me serve. 17. Le domestique de maison, et le garçon servent à table. 18. Voici du poisson, monsieur, servez-vous. 19. Ne voyez-vous pas que je me sers? 20. Il fait très froid, il gèle. 21. Il demande que je le mène au théâtre. 22. Le professeur effaçait les mots que nous avions écrits sur le tableau. 23. Je nettoie mon paletot avec de la benzine. 24. Nous avançons. 25. Nous ne mangeons pas beaucoup quand il fait très chaud. 26. Il possède un palais.

276. 1. He bends the stick. 2. It is freezing. 3. He throws his hat in the street. 4. The tailor cleans my coat. 5. The coachman does not clean the carriage. 6. Do I lead my horse by the bridle? 7. I want to [1] be [1] waited [1] upon.[1] 8. I judged him badly. 9. If he goes away, will you write to him? 10. Why was he not eating? 11. Do you want him to go out? 12. We were going forward. 13. The servant waits on the table. 14. We erase the words you have written on the blackboard.

[1] *qu'on me serve.*

277. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le gaz, the gas.
le clou, the nail.
le piano, the piano.
le fauteuil, the arm-chair.
le pupitre, the desk.
le participe présent, the present participle.
le mur, the wall.

Feminine.

la bouche, the mouth.

---

toucher,	to touch.	**comment**,	how,
lever,	to raise.	**sans**,	without.
mettre,	to put.	**trop**,	too (too much, too many).
tirer,	to draw.	**assez**,	enough.
pousser,	to push.	**léger**,	light.
ouvrir,	to open.	**lourd**,	heavy.
pour,	for, to.	**contre**,	against.
en,	by.		

278. CONVERSATION. — Le participe présent.

1. Pouvez-vous toucher au plafond ?
2. Non, je ne peux pas y toucher, il est trop haut.
1. Etes-vous assez fort pour lever le piano ?
2. Non, il est trop lourd pour moi.
1. Pouvez-vous toucher au clou qui est contre le mur ?
2. Non, je ne peux pas y toucher, il est trop haut.
1. Pouvez-vous porter ce fauteuil dans le corridor ?
2. Non, je ne peux pas l'y porter, parce qu'il est trop lourd.
1. Comment pouvez-vous mettre ce fauteuil dans le corridor ?
2. Je peux l'y mettre en le tirant ou en le poussant.
1. Votre livre est fermé : pouvez-vous lire ?
2. Oui, je peux lire en ouvrant mon livre, mais je ne peux pas lire sans l'ouvrir.
1. Pouvez-vous parler sans ouvrir la bouche ?
2. Non, je ne peux pas parler sans l'ouvrir.

1. Comment pouvez-vous toucher au gaz ?
2. Je peux toucher au gaz en montant sur une chaise.
1. Comment pouvez-vous sortir si la porte est fermée ?
2. Je peux sortir en ouvrant la porte.
1. Comment pouvez-vous mettre cette table dans le corridor ?
2. En la poussant ou en la tirant ; elle est trop lourde pour la porter.
1. Comment peut-on apprendre le français ?
2. En parlant beaucoup, en étudiant, et en lisant.
1. Comment pouvez-vous aller à New-York ?
2. En prenant le train.

Etc., etc.

279. READING.

PROVERBE.

Moins on pense, plus on parle.

"Empty barrels make the most sound."

280. LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE.

On me demande quelles sont les causes auxquelles nous devons de voir la langue française devenue la langue de la société élégante et polie chez toutes les nations de la terre. C'est que, sans être une langue morte, nous sommes une langue "fixée," et que la logique gouverne notre parole jusque dans la forme de nos périodes. Je ne trouve cela dans aucune autre langue du monde ; cela nous coûte peut-être quelque chose pour la facilité, et quelquefois pour la grâce ; mais cela nous donne une solidité, une fermeté, une clarté incomparables. JULES SIMON.

CHAPTER XX.

IRREGULARITIES IN CONJUGATIONS III. AND IV.

281. Aside from the irregular verbs, a list of which is given farther on (§ 302), little is to be said about the verbs of these conjugations, very few in number (about eighty), and mostly irregular.

282. Among the regular verbs of Conjugation III., we will quote: *apercevoir*, "to perceive," *décevoir*, "to deceive," *percevoir*, "to perceive," "to collect," *concevoir*, "to conceive," in which the *c* takes a cedilla before *a*, *o*, and *u*; *devoir*, "to owe," the past participle of which, *dû*, takes a circumflex accent in the masculine singular.

283. As has already been stated, verbs of Conjugation IV., whose stems end in *c*, *d*, or *t*, do not take the ending *t* of the third person singular of the present indicative.

---

284. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le jardin public, the public garden.
le siège, the seat.
le musée, the museum.
le château, the castle.
le lièvre, the hare.
le banc, the bench.
le lait, the milk.
le menteur, the liar.
le bateau, the boat.
les Gaulois, the Gauls.

Feminine.

la villa, the villa.
la rose, the rose.
la bière, the beer.
la chasse, the hunt.
la lampe, the lamp.
la soupe, the soup.
la guerre, the war.
la robe, the dress.

acquérir,	to acquire.	**faire,**	to do (or make).
s'en aller,	to go away.	**mentir,**	to lie.
partir,	to depart.	**mettre,**	to put, or place.
s'asseoir,	to sit down.	**pouvoir,**	can — to be able.
coudre,	to sew.	**prendre,**	to take, to catch.
courir,	to run.	**rire,**	to laugh.
craindre,	to fear.	**suivre,**	to follow.
cueillir,	to pick.	**venir,**	to come.
dire,	to say.	**revenir,**	to come back.
aller,	to go.	**vêtir,**	to dress.
boire,	to drink.	**vouloir,**	to wish, or want.
connaître,	to know.	**car,**	for.
envoyer,	to send.		

285. EXERCISES.

All verbs used in this exercise are contained in the above list. Students should study the principal parts of these verbs before reading this exercise.

1. Mon frère a acquis une grande fortune en Amérique. 2. Mon ami voulait prendre le bateau qui part le samedi. 3. Nous avons beaucoup ri hier chez votre tante. 4. Je m'en vais car il est très tard. 5. Il but de la bière en Allemagne. 6. Asseyez-vous donc, monsieur. 7. Je m'assiérai. 8. Les dames cousent leurs robes. 9. Avez-vous cousu votre paletot? 10. Ma mère veut que je couse. 11. Que craignons-nous? 12. Les Gaulois ne craignaient aucun ennemi. 13. Le chien vous craint. 14. Il voulait que je crusse ce qu'il me disait. 15. Tu lui diras que je suis allé six fois chez lui. 16. Voulez-vous que je boive du lait? 17. Qu'a-t-il bu? Il n'a rien bu. 18. Je voudrais que vous connussiez mon ami. 19. Avez-vous connu mon père? 20. Connaissez-vous ma sœur? 21. Je ne connais pas votre villa. 22. Qu' avez-vous fait? J'ai cueilli des roses dans le jardin public, et je les ai mises sur un banc, où un homme les a prises. 23. Comment avez-vous pu cueillir des fleurs dans le jardin public? J'y suis allé le soir, quand le garde s'en était

allé. 24. Allez chez vous: je vous suis. 25. Voulez-vous que je vous suive? 26. Les chiens suivent le lièvre, à la chasse. 27. Les Français sont généralement bien vêtus. 28. Je vous enverrai ma montre et vous la mettrez dans votre poche, jusqu'à ce que je revienne. 29. Nous voulons que vous mettiez la lampe sur la table.

286. 1. What do we drink in this country? 2. We drink water, milk, beer, etc. 3. What do they drink in Europe? 4. In Germany they drink beer; in France, Italy, and Spain, they drink wine. 5. We shall send him the hare we caught[1] in hunting. 6. Where has he gone? He has gone to his castle. 7. Peasants fear the war. 8. My dog follows me. 9. I put those flowers on the table against the wall and went away. 10. Do you want him to come back? 11. What would you fear? 12. We shall go to Paris. You went[1] there last year, did[2] you[2] not[2]? 13. He never lies. 14. What were you saying? 15. Laugh while you are young: the day will come when[3] you$_1$ can$_3$[4] laugh$_5$ no$_2$ more.$_4$ 16. My sister-in-law will come to see us.

[1] past indefinite. [2] *n'est-ce pas.* [3] *où.* [4] future.

---

287. VOCABULARY.

Masculine.

le mal de mer, the seasickness.
le paquebot, the packet.
le bateau à vapeur, the steamboat.
le bateau à voiles, the sailing-vessel.
le bateau à hélice, the screw steamer.
le bateau à roues, the side-wheeler.
le pont, the deck.
le genre, the gender, the kind.
le passager, the passenger.

Feminine.

la cabine, the cabin.
la compagnie, the company.
la traversée, the voyage.
la rivière, the river.
la ligne, the line.
la plupart, the majority.

---

traverser, to cross.
transatlantique, transatlantic.
déjà, already.
à bord, on board.

288. CONVERSATION. — La traversée.

1. Avez-vous déjà fait la traversée de l'océan Atlantique ?
2. Oui, je l'ai déjà faite plusieurs fois.
1. Quels genres de bateaux avez-vous pris pour faire la traversée ?
2. J'ai pris un bateau à vapeur.
1. Avez-vous pris un bateau à hélice ou un bateau à roues ?
2. J'ai pris un bateau à hélice.
1. Comment sont la plupart des bateaux à vapeur ?
2. Ils sont à hélice.
1. Les bateaux à vapeur qui vont sur les rivières sont-ils généralement à hélice ?
2. Non, la plupart sont à roues.
1. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas pris un bateau à voiles pour aller en Europe ?
2. Parce que les bateaux à voiles vont trop lentement.
1. Où restent les passagers pendant la traversée, quand il fait beau temps ?
2. Ils restent sur le pont.
1. Nommez une grande ligne de paquebots transatlantiques ?
2. C'est la "Compagnie Générale Transatlantique Française."
1. Quels sont les plus beaux bateaux de cette ligne ?
2. Ce sont la "Gascogne," la "Touraine," la "Champagne," la "Normandie," etc.
1. Où dorment les passagers à bord ?
2. Ils dorment dans les cabines.
1. Dans combien de jours les bateaux français font-ils la traversée ?

2. Ils la font très vite, dans 6 ou 7 jours.

1. Avez-vous eu le mal de mer, pendant la traversée ?

2. Non, je n'ai pas eu le mal de mer, mais beaucoup de dames l'ont eu le premier jour.

289. READING.

PROVERBE.

Le travail *vient à bout de* tout.
conquers

"Work conquers everything."

290. LA SORBONNE.

La Sorbonne est un établissement créé par Robert de Sorbon, chapelain et confesseur de Saint Louis, pour les études théologiques. Ce collège devint un des plus célèbres du monde et produisit un si grand nombre d'habiles théologiens, qu'il donna son nom à tous les membres de la Faculté de théologie, qui prenaient le titre de "docteurs" et de "bacheliers" de Sorbonne, quoiqu'ils n'appartinssent[1] pas à cette maison. Les décisions des "docteurs de Sorbonne" étaient regardées comme des oracles en matière de foi. LAROUSSE.

[1] From *appartenir*.

291. DANS UN ALBUM.

Sur cette page blanche où mes vers vont[1] éclore,[1]
Qu'un regard[2] quelquefois ramène[3] votre cœur !
De votre vie aussi la page est blanche encore :
Que ne puis-je y graver un seul mot : le bonheur !

LAMARTINE.

[1] are going to come forth. [2] look. [3] lead back.

292. FOURTH REVIEW LESSON.

1. Give the present subjunctive of one verb of each conjugation.

2. To what part of the verb are added the endings *sse, sses, t, ssions, ssiez, ssent* in order to form the imperfect subjunctive?

3. Give the present and imperfect subjunctive of *être* and *avoir.*

4. Give two verbs and two phrases which require the subjunctive.

5. Give the names of five large French cities.

6. Is the subjunctive always to be used after *de manière que, de sorte que?*

7. What impersonal expressions require the subjunctive?

8. When is the subjunctive used in a dependent clause? (Special case.)

9. Quote ten phrases of concession, fear, anteriority, etc., requiring the subjunctive.

10. When are the present and past subjunctive used, and when the imperfect and pluperfect?

11. Make a few remarks upon the inflection of verbs in *cer, ger, eler, eter, yer.*

12. What are the two classes of verbs in Conjugation II.?

13. Do many verbs belong to Conjugations III. and IV.?

14. Conjugate the present and imperfect indicative and present subjunctive of *pouvoir, vouloir,* and *savoir.*

293. EXERCISE.

1. I am very sorry [that] your sister is not here. 2. Are you surprised that we should go? 3. We fear [that] the train has gone. 4. Do you live far from the post-office? Yes, but the letter-box is very near [of] our house. 5. It is necessary for you to be in Paris before long, so that you may be able to see my friend before he goes away. 6. You are the only man I know in this city. 7. Do you wish me to learn that long lesson? 8. I hoped [that] you would be able to stay at our home two more weeks. 9. Would it have been proper for me to have asked him (for) that letter? 10. Are you not very glad to have finished the first part of this book?

CHAPTER XXI.

How to Write a Letter.

ADDRESS — HEADING — BEGINNING — ENDING.

294. ADDRESS.

Dr. X.	*Monsieur le Docteur X.*
Capt. Z.	*Monsieur le Capitaine Z.*
Prof. Y.	*Monsieur le Professeur Y.*
Gen. B.	*Monsieur le Général B.*
Mr. A.	*Monsieur A.*
Mrs. A.	*Madame A.*
Care of.	*Chez.*
	Aux soins de.
	Aux bons soins de.
Please forward.	*Prière de faire suivre.*
Mr. C. E. Bradley, *25 Main Street,* *Spencer.*	*Monsieur C. E. Bradley,* *25 Grand rue,* *Spencer.*
Mrs. R. E. Lebon, *320 Gambetta Street,* *Castres.* *Department of "Tarn."* *France.*	*Madame R. E. Lebon,* *320 rue Gambetta,* *Castres.* *(France.)* *(Tarn.)*
(Please forward.) *Miss Margaret Plant,* *c/o Mrs. J. Lefèvre,* *111 Opera Ave.,* *France.* *Paris.*	*(Prière de faire suivre.)* *Mademoiselle Marguerite Plant,* *Aux bons soins de* *Madame J. Lefèvre,* *111 Avenue de l'Opéra,* *(France.)* *Paris.*

295. HEADINGS.

Dear Sir.	*Monsieur.*
Dear Madam.	*Madame, Mademoiselle.*
My dear Mr. X.	*Cher (mon cher) Monsieur X.*
My dear Mrs. X.	*Chère (ma chère) Madame X.*
My dear friend.	*Mon cher ami.*
	Ma chère amie.

296. BEGINNINGS.

I take the liberty of writing . . .	*Veuillez pardonner la liberté que je prends de vous écrire . . .*
Your favor of . . . instant at hand.	*J'ai (nous avons) bien reçu votre honorée du . . . courant.*
I have been so glad to hear from you . . .	*J'ai été si heureux (heureuse) de recevoir de vos nouvelles . . .*
Will you pardon me for not having answered sooner your letter of the . . .	*Me pardonnerez-vous de n'avoir pas répondu plus tôt à votre lettre du . . .*
I have had so much to do lately, that it has been impossible for me to answer, as soon as I would have liked to, your kind letter of the . . .	*J'ai eu tant à faire ces derniers temps qu'il m'a été impossible de répondre aussitôt que je l'eusse voulu à votre bonne lettre du . . .*

297. ENDINGS.

My regards to your family.	*Mes amitiés chez vous.*
Please give my regards to Mrs. . . .	*Je vous prie de présenter mes respects à Madame . . .*
Remember me to Mr. . . .	*Rappelez-moi au souvenir de Monsieur . . .*
Remember me kindly to . . .	*Rappelez-moi au bon souvenir de . . .*
Thanking you in advance.	*Veuillez agréer mes remercîments anticipés.*
Hoping you will honor me with a reply.	*Dans l'espoir que vous voudrez bien m'honorer d'une réponse.*

I remain . . .	*Je demeure . . .*
I have the honor to suscribe myself, Sir . . .	*J'ai l'honneur de me dire, Monsieur . . .*
I beg to remain . . .	*Je vous prie de me croire . . .*
Believe me always . . .	*Croyez-moi toujours . . .*

Yours truly.	*Votre bien dévoué.*
I am, yours truly.	*Veuillez accepter mes salutations empressées.*
Respectfully yours.	*Veuillez agréer, Monsieur (Madame, Mademoiselle), l'assurance de mes sentiments respectueux et dévoués.*

Very respectfully yours.	*Daignez agréer, Madame, l'expression de mes sentiments les plus respectueusement dévoués.*

Yours cordially.	*Bien à vous . . .*
	À vous de cœur . . .
	Votre bien dévoué . . .
	Je vous serre cordialement la main.

Your sincere friend.	*Votre ami (amie) sincère.*

---

298. NOTES. BILLETS.

Mrs. Z. requests the pleasure (the honor) of Mr. and Mrs. X.'s company for dinner Tuesday evening, December twenty-first, at half-past six o'clock.	*Monsieur et Madame Z. prient Monsieur et Madame X. de leur faire le plaisir (l'honneur) de venir dîner chez eux, le mardi 21 décembre à six heures et demie.*

Mr. and Mrs. X. accept with many thanks the kind invitation of Mrs. Z. for Tuesday Evening.	*Monsieur et Madame X. remercient Monsieur et Madame Z. de leur aimable invitation, qu'ils acceptent avec le plus grand plaisir.*

Mr. and Mrs. X. thank Mrs. Z. for her kind invitation, and regret that unforeseen circumstances prevent them from accepting it.

Monsieur et Madame X. remercient vivement Monsieur et Madame Z. de leur aimable invitation, que des circonstances imprévues les empêchent, à leur grand regret, d'accepter.

My dear John,

Can't you come and dine with us informally to-morrow evening at the usual hour?

Mon cher Jean,

Viens donc dîner avec nous demain soir, à l'heure habituelle — nous serons "en famille."

You cannot think how much I regret that it is impossible for me to accept your cordial invitation, but an indisposition — somewhat serious — keeps me at home. Many, many thanks.

Tu ne saurais, croire combien je regrette qu'il me soit impossible de me rendre à ta cordiale invitation, mais je m'en vois empêché par une indisposition assez sérieuse. Merci mille fois. . . .

299 LA MARSEILLAISE.

Par Rouget de Lisle.

I.

Allons, enfants de la Patrie,
Le jour de gloire est arrivé!
Contre nous de la tyrannie
L'étendard sanglant est levé! . . .
Entendez-vous dans ces campagnes
Mugir ces féroces soldats
Qui viennent, jusque dans nos bras,
Egorger vos fils, vos compagnes!! . . .

Refrain. — Aux armes, citoyens! formez vos bataillons!
Marchons!
Marchons!
Qu'un sang impur abreuve nos sillons!

II.

Que veut cette horde d'esclaves,
De traîtres, de rois conjurés ?
Pour qui ces ignobles entraves,
Ces fers dès longtemps préparés ?
Français ! pour nous, ah ! quel outrage ! . . .
Quels transports il doit exciter !!
C'est nous qu'on ose menacer
De rendre à l'antique esclavage !
Aux armes, citoyens ! . . . etc.

III.

Quoi ! ces cohortes étrangères
Feraient la loi dans nos foyers !
Quoi ! ces phalanges mercenaires
Terrasseraient nos fiers guerriers !
Grand Dieu ! par des mains enchaînées
Nos fronts sous le joug se ploîraient !
De vils despotes deviendraient
Les maîtres de nos destinées ! !
Aux armes, citoyens ! . . . etc.

IV.

Tremblez, tyrans, et vous, perfides,
L'opprobre de tous les partis !
Tremblez ! vos projets parricides
Vont enfin recevoir leur prix !
Tout est soldat pour vous combattre ! . . .
S'ils tombent, nos jeunes héros,
La terre en produit de nouveaux
Contre vous tout prêts à se battre !
Aux armes, citoyens ! . . . etc.

V.

Français ! en guerriers magnanimes,
Portez ou retenez vos coups !
Epargnez ces tristes victimes
A regret s'armant contre nous !
Mais ces despotes sanguinaires,
Mais ces complices de Bouillé,
Tous ces tigres qui, sans pitié
Déchirent le sein de leur mère ! !
Aux armes, citoyens ! . . . etc.

VI.

Amour sacré de la Patrie !
Conduis, soutiens nos bras vengeurs !
Liberté ! Liberté chérie !
Combats avec tes défenseurs !
Sous nos drapeaux, que la Victoire
Accoure à nos mâles accents !
Que tes ennemis expirants
Voient ton triomphe, et notre gloire ! ! . . .
Aux armes, citoyens ! . . . etc.

VII.

Nous entrerons dans la carrière
Quand nos aînés n'y seront plus !
Nous y trouverons leur poussière
Et la trace de leurs vertus !
Bien moins jaloux de leur survivre
Que de partager leur cercueil
Nous aurons le sublime orgueil
De les venger ou de les suivre ! ! . . .
Aux armes, citoyens ! . . . etc.

LA FAYETTE.

PAR M. HENRI MÉROU, CONSUL DE FRANCE À CHICAGO.

I.

"DIX–HUIT ans ! Noblesse, richesse,
Santé, vigueur de la jeunesse,
Tendre épouse, bonheur, amour,
J'ai tout cela. Des mieux en cour,
Jamais autre fils de la France
Ne naquit à plus d'espérance;
Je n'ai, pour un grand avenir,
Qu'à vivre — et laisser tout venir."
Ex-page à Marie-Antoinette,
Ainsi peut penser La Fayette.

II.

"Dix-huit ans ! . . . Dans sa noble ivresse,
Là-bas, un peuple se redresse
Contre le joug de son tyran;
J'entends sa voix, je vois son sang
Couler sur la vaillante terre
Des fils de 'Nouvelle-Angleterre.'
Héros, ils vont en vain mourir,
Si nul ne va les secourir."
Telle est la pensée inquiète
Du Marquis Motier La Fayette.

III.

Dix-huit ans ! . . . Va, fils de la France,
Là-bas porter la délivrance !
Armes, argent, sang, donne tout
Avec ton cœur. Un jour, debout,
Prêt à calmer tous cris d'alarme,
Par les fils de tes frères d'armes,
Dressé, ton bronze redira,
Héros, l'amour qui t'inspira;
Et tu seras, — gloire éternelle ! —
De l'amitié la sentinelle !

IRREGULAR VERBS.

In the following tables are given after each stem, simply the personal endings with which that stem is used — unless, as happens with the present of *Aller*, the verb is of too irregular formation. Moreover, when the endings are those the verb would have if regular, they are omitted. Tenses not given are not in use. Like the verbs below, are conjugated their compounds, unless otherwise stated.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

300. CONJUGATION I.

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PARTICIPLE.	PRES. INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT IND.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE.	FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.	PAST DEFIN.	IMPERF. SUBJ.	PAST PART.
Aller, to go	allant	je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont	all-	aill (-e, -es, -e, -ent) all (-ions, -iez)	va all (-ons, -ez)	ir-	ir-	all-	all-	allé
Envoyer,[1] to send	envoyant	envoi (-e, -es, -e, -ent) envoy (-ons, -ez)	envoy-	envoi (-e, -es, -e, -ent) envoy (-ions, -iez)	envoie envoy (-ons, -ez)	enverr-	enverr-	envoy-	envoy-	envoyé

301. CONJUGATION II.

Aquérir,[2] to acquire	acquérant	acquier (-s, -s, -t, -ent) acquer (-ons, -ez)	acquér-	acquiér (-e, -es, -e, -ent) acquér (-ions, -iez)	acquiers acquér (-ons, -ez)	acquerr-	acquerr-	acqu (-is, -is, -it, *etc.*)	acqu (-isse, *etc.*)	acquis
Assaillir,[3] to assail	assaillant	assaill (-e, -es, -e, -ons, *etc.*)	assaill-	assaill (-e, *etc.*)	assaill (-e, -ons, -ez)	assaillir-	assaillir-	assaill (-is, *etc.*)	assaill (-isse, *etc.*)	assailli
Bouillir, to boil	bouillant	bou (-s, -s, -t) bouill (-ons, -ez, -ent)	bouill-	bouill (-e, *etc.*)	bous bouill (-ons, -ez)	bouillir-	bouillir-	bouill (-is, *etc.*)	bouill (-isse, *etc.*)	bouilli
Courir, to run	courant	cour (-s, -s, -t) cour (-ons, -ez, -ent)	cour-	cour (-e, *etc.*)	cours cour (-ons, -ez)	courr-	courr-	cour (-us, -us, -ut) cour (-ûmes, *etc.*)	cour (-usse, *etc.*)	couru
Cueillir, to pick	cueillant	cueill (-e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent)	cueill-	cueill (-e, *etc.*)	cueill (e, -ons, -ez)	cueiller-	cueiller-	cueill (-is, *etc.*)	cueill (-isse, *etc.*)	cueilli

Dormir, to sleep	dormant	dor (-s, -s, -t) dorm (-ons, -ez, -ent)	dorm-	dorm (-e, *etc.*)	dors dorm (-ons, -ez)	dormir-	dormir-	dorm (-is, *etc.*)	dorm (-isse, *etc.*)	dormi
Faillir, to fail	faillant	je faux, tu faux, il faut nous faillons vous faillez ils faillent	faill-			faudr- (*or*, faillir-)	faudr- (*or*, faillir-)	faill (-is, *etc.*)	faill (-isse, *etc.*)	failli
Fuir, to flee	fuyant	fui (-s, -s, -t, -ent) fuy (-ons, -ez)	fuy-	fui (-e, -es, *etc.*) fuy (-ions, -iez)	fuis fuy (-ons, -ez)	fuir-	fuir-	fu (-is, *etc.*)	fu (-isse, *etc.*)	fui
Gésir, to lie down	gisant	ci-gît il gît nous gisons	gis-							
Mentir,[4] to lie	mentant	men (-s, -s, -t) ment (-ons, -ez, -ent)	ment-	ment (-e, *etc.*)	mens ment (-ons, -ez)	mentir-	mentir-	ment (-is, *etc.*)	ment (-isse, *etc.*)	menti
Mourir, to die	mourant	meur (-s, -s, -t, -ent) mour (-ons, -ez)	mour-	meur (-e, -es, -e, -ent) mour (-ions, -iez)	meurs mour (-ons, -ez)	mourr-	mourr-	mour (-us, -us, -ut, *etc.*)	mour (-usse, *etc.*)	mort
Offrir,[5] to offer	offrant	offr (-e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent)	offr-	offr (-e, *etc.*)	offr (-e, -ons, -ez)	offrir-	offrir-	offr (-is, *etc.*)	offr (-isse, *etc.*)	offert
Partir, to depart	partant	par (-s, -s, -t) part (-ons, -ez, -ent)	part-	part (-e, *etc.*)	pars part (-ons, -ez)	partir-	partir-	part (-is, *etc.*)	part (-isse, *etc.*)	parti
Servir, to serve	servant	ser (-s, -s, -t) serv (-ons, -ez, -ent)	serv-	serv (-e, *etc.*)	sers serv (-ons, -ez)	servir-	servir-	serv (-is, *etc.*)	serv (-isse, *etc.*)	servi
Sortir, to go out	sortant	sor (-s, -s, -t) sort (-ons, -ez, -ent)	sort-	sort (-e, *etc.*)	sors sort (-ons, -ez)	sortir-	sortir-	sort (-is, *etc.*)	sort (-isse, *etc.*)	sorti
Tenir,[6] to hold	tenant	tien (-s, -s, -t) ten (-ons, -ez) tienn (-ent)	ten-	tienn (-e, -es, -e, -ent) ten (-ions, -iez)	tiens ten (-ons, -ez)	tiendr-	tiendr-	tin (-s, -s, -nes, -tes, -rent)	tin (-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent)	tenu
Vêtir, to clothe	vêtant	vêt (-s, -s, -ons, -ez, -ent)	vêt-	vêt (-e, *etc.*)	vêt (-s, -ons, -ez)	vêtir-	vêtir-	vêt (-is, *etc.*)	vêt (-isse, *etc.*)	vêtu

[1] Conjugate in the same way: **renvoyer,** to send back.
[2] Conjugate in the same way: **conquérir,** to conquer; **s'enquérir,** to inquire; **requérir,** to require.
[3] Conjugate in the same way: **tressaillir,** to be startled.
[4] Conjugate in the same way: **démentir,** to contradict; **sentir,** to smell, to feel; **se repentir,** to repent.
[5] Conjugate in the same way: **ouvrir,** to open; and its compounds, **rouvrir,** and **couvrir.**
[6] Conjugate in the same way: **appartenir,** to belong to; **maintenir,** to maintain; **soutenir,** to sustain.

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PARTICIPLE.	PRES. INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT IND.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.	PAST DEFIN.	IMPERF. SUBJ.	PAST PART.
Asseoir, to sit	asseyant (*or* assoyant)	assied (-s, -s) assey (-ons, -ez, -ent)	assey-	assey-	assieds assey (-ons, -ez)	assiér-	assiér-	ass (-is, *etc.*)	ass (-isse, *etc.*)	assis
Déchoir, to decline		déchoi (-s, -s, -t, -ent) déchoy (-ons, -ez)		déchoi (-e, -es, -e, -ent) déchoy (-ons, -ez)		décherr-	décherr-	déch (-us, *etc.*)	déch (-usse, *etc.*)	déchu
Devoir, to owe	devant	doi (-s, -s, -t) dev (-ons, -ez) doiv (-ent)	dev-	doiv (-e, -es, -e, -ent) dev (-ions, -ez)	dois dev (-ons, -ez)	devr-	devr-	d (-us, *etc.*)	d (-usse, *etc.*)	dû
Échoir, to fall due, to fall to the lot of, etc.	échéant	il échoit ils échoient (*not used in 1st and 2d pers.*)				écherr-	écherr-	éch (-us, *etc.*)	éch (-usse, *etc.*)	échu
Falloir, to be obliged, must		il faut	il fallait	qu' il faille		il faudra	il faudrait	il fallût	qu' il fallût	fallu
Mouvoir,[1] to move	mouvant	meu (-s, -s, -t) mouv (-ons, -ez) meuv (-ent)	mouv-	meuv (-e, -es, -e, -ent) mouv (-ions, -iez)	meus mouv (-ons, -ez)	mouvr-	mouvr-	m (-us, *etc.*)	m (-usse, *etc.*)	mû
Pleuvoir,[2] to rain	pleuvant	il pleut	il pleuvait	qu' il pleuve		il pleuvra	il pleuvrait	il plut	qu' il plût	plu
Pourvoir, to provide	pourvoyant	pourvoi (-s, -s, -t, -ent) pourvoy (-ons, -ez)	pourvoy-	pourvoi (-e, -es, -e, -ent) pourvoy (-ions, -iez)	pourvois pourvoy (-ons, -ez)	pourvoir-	pourvoir-	pourv (-us, *etc.*)	pourv (-usse, *etc.*)	pourvu
Pouvoir,[3] to be able, can	pouvant	peu (-x, -x, -t) (*also:* je puis) pouv (-ons, -ez) peuv (-ent)	pouv-	puiss (-e, *etc.*)		pourr-	pourr-	p (-us, *etc.*)	p (-usse, *etc.*)	pu
Savoir, to know	sachant	sai (-s, -s, -t) sav (-ons, -ez, -ent)	sav-	sach (-e, *etc.*)	sache sach (-ons, -ez)	saur-	saur-	s (-us, *etc.*)	s (-usse, *etc.*)	su
Seoir, to be becoming	séant									sis
Seoir, to sit	seyant	il sied ils siéent	il seyait ils seyaient	qu' il siée qu' ils siéent		il siéra ils siéront	il siérait ils siéraient			

Surseoir, to suspend, to postpone	sursoyant	sursoi (-s, -s, -t, -ent) sursoy (-ons, -ez)	sursoy-			surseoir-	surseoir-	surs(-is, *etc.*)	surs (-isse, *etc.*)	sursis
Valoir, to be worth	valant	vau (-x, -x, -t) val (-ons, -ez, -ent)	val-	vaill(-e, -es, -e, -ent) val(-ions, -iez)		vaudr-	vaudr-	val (-us, *etc.*)	val (-usse, *etc.*)	valu
Voir,[4] to see	voyant	voi (-s, -s, -t, -ent) voy (-ons, -ez)	voy-	voi (-e, -es, -e, -ent) voy(-ions,-iez)	vois voy (-ons, -ez)	verr-	verr-	v (-is, *etc.*)	v (-isse, *etc.*)	vu
Vouloir, to wish, will, to be willing	voulant	veu (-x, -x, -t) voul (-ons, -ez) veul (-ent)	voul-	veuill (-e, -es, -e, -ent) voul (-ions, -iez)	veux, veuille voul(-ons,-ez) *also:* veuillez	voudr-	voudr-	voul (-us, *etc.*)	voul (-usse, *etc.*)	voulu

303. CONJUGATION IV.

Absoudre, to absolve	absolvant	absou (-s, -s, -t) absolv (-ons, -ez, -ent)	absolv-	absolv(-e, *etc.*)	absous absolv (-ons, -ez)	absoudr-	absoudr-			absous (*fem.:* absoute)
Atteindre,[5] to attain	atteignant	attein (-s, -s, -t) atteign (-ons, -ez, -ent)	atteign-	atteign(-e, *etc.*)	atteins atteign (-ons, -ez)	atteindr-	atteindr-	atteign (-is, *etc.*)	atteign(-isse, *etc.*)	atteint
Battre, to beat	battant	bat (-s, -s) il bat batt (-ons, -ez, -ent)	batt-	batt (-e, *etc.*)	bats batt(-ons, -ez)	battr-	battr-	batt (-is, *etc.*)	batt (-isse, *etc.*)	battu
Boire, to drink	buvant	boi (-s, -s, -t) buv (-ons, -ez) boiv (-ent)	buv-	boiv (-e, -es, -e, -ent) buv (-ions,-iez)	bois buv (-ons, -ez)	boir-	boir-	b (-us, *etc.*)	b(-usse, *etc.*)	bu
Braire, to bray	brayant	il brait ils braient	il brayait ils brayaient	qu' il braye qu' ils brayent		il braira ils brairont	il brairait ils brairaient			brait
Bruire, to rustle		il bruit ils bruyent (*or:* ils bruissent)	il bruyait ils bruyaient							
Clore, to close		clo (-s, -s, -t) (*no plural*)		clos-	clos	clor-	clor-			clos

[1] Conjugate in the same way : **émouvoir,** to move, to agitate.

[2] Impersonal.

[3] In interrogations use the form **puis, puis-je?** this form may also be used in negatives; **Je ne puis pas.**

[4] Conjugate in the same way: **revoir,** to see again; **entrevoir,** to see partly; but **prévoir** has **prévoirai** in the future.

[5] Conjugate in the same way: all verbs in **aindre, eindre,** and **oindre.**

CONJUGATION IV (*Continued*).

INFINITIVE.	PRES. PARTICIPLE.	PRES. INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT IND.	PRES. SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	FUTURE.	CONDITIONAL.	PAST DEFIN.	IMPERF. SUBJ.	PAST PART.
Conclure,[1] to conclude	concluant	conclu (-s, -s, -t, -ons, -ez, -ent)	conclu-	conclu (-e, *etc.*)	conclu (-s, -ons, -ez)	conclur-	conclur-	concl (-us, *etc.*)	concl (-usse, *etc.*)	conclu
Conduire,[2] to lead, to conduct	conduisant	conduis (-s, -s, -t) conduis (-ons, -ez, -ent)	conduis-	conduis (-e, *etc.*)	conduis conduis (-ons, -ez)	conduir-	conduir-	conduis (-is, *etc.*)	conduis (-isse, *etc.*)	conduit
Confire, to preserve, to pickle	confisant	confi (-s, -s, -t) confis (-ons, -ez, -ent)	confis-	confis (-e, *etc.*)	confis confis (-ons, -ez)	confir-ī	confir-	conf (-is, *etc.*)	conf (-isse, *etc.*)	confit
Connaître, to know	connaissant	connai (-s, -s, -t) connaiss (-ons, -ez, -ent)	connaiss-	connaiss (-e, *etc.*)	connais connaiss (-ons, -ez)	connaitr-	connaitr-	conn (-us, *etc.*)	conn (-usse, *etc.*)	connu
Coudre, to sew	cousant	coud (-s, -s) cous(-ons, -ez, -ent)	cous-	cous (-e, *etc.*)	couds cous(-ons,-ez)	coudr-	coudr-	cous (-is, *etc.*)	cous (-isse, *etc.*)	cousu
Croire, to believe	croyant	croi (-s, -s, -t, -ent) croy (-ons, -ez)	croy-	croi (-e, -es, -e, -ent) croy (-ions, -iez)	crois croy (-ons,-ez)	croir-	croir-	cr (-us, *etc.*)	cr (-usse, *etc.*)	cru
Croître, to grow	croissant	croî (-s, -s, -t) croiss (-ons, -ez, -ent)	croiss-	croiss (-e, *etc.*)	croîs croiss (-ons, -ez)	croîtr-	croîtr-	cr (-ûs, *etc.*)	cr (-ûsse, *etc.*)	crû
Dire,[3] to say	disant	di (-s, -s, -t) dis (-ons, -ent) vous dites	dis-	dis (-e, *etc.*)	dis dis (-ons) dites	dir-	dir-	d (-is, *etc.*)	d (-isse, *etc.*)	dit
Éclore, to bud		il éclot ils éclosent		qu' il éclose qu' ils éclosent		il éclora ils écloront	il éclorait ils écloraient			éclos
Écrire, to write	écrivant	écri (-s, -s, -t) écriv (-ons, -ez, -ent)	écriv-	écriv (-e, *etc.*)	écris écriv (-ons, -ez)	écrir-	écrir-	écriv (-is, *etc.*)	écriv (-isse, *etc.*)	écrit
Faire, to do, or make	faisant	fai (-s, -s, -t) fais (-ons) vous faites, ils font	fais-	fass (-e, *etc.*)	fais faisons faites	fer-	fer-	f (-is, *etc.*)	f (-isse, *etc.*)	fait
Frire, to fry		fri (-s, -s, -t) (*no plural*)			fris	frir-	frir-			frit
Lire, to read	lisant	li (-s, -s, -t) lis (-ons, -ez, -ent)	lis-	lis (-e, *etc.*)	lis lis (-ons, -ez)	lir-	lir-	l (-us, *etc.*)	l (-usse, *etc.*)	lu
Luire, to shine	luisant	lui (-s, -s, -t) luis (-ons, -ez, -ent)	luis-	luis (-e, *etc.*)	luis luis (-ons, -ez)	luir-	luir-			lui

Mettre, to put, to place	mettant	met (-s, -s) il met mett(-ons,-ez,-ent)	mett-	mett (-e, *etc.*)	mets mett(-ons,-ez)	mettr-	mettr-	m (-is, *etc.*)	m (-isse, *etc.*)	mis
Moudre, to grind	moulant	moud (-s, -s) il moud moul(-ons,-ez,-ent)	moul-	moul (-e, *etc.*)	mouds moul (-ons, -ez)	moudr-	moudr-	moul (-us, *etc.*)	moul (-usse, *etc.*)	moulu
Naître, to be born	naissant	nai (-s, -s, -t) naiss(-ons,-ez,-ent)	naiss-	naiss (-e, *etc.*)	nais naiss (-ons, -ez)	naîtr-	naîtr-	naqu (-is, *etc.*)	naqu (-isse *etc.*)	né
Nuire, to injure	nuisant	nui (-s, -s, -t) nuis (-ons,-ez,-ent)	nuis-	nuis (-e, *etc.*)	nuis nuis(-ons,-ez)	nuir-	nuir-	nuis (-is, *etc.*)	nuis (-isse, *etc.*)	nui
Paître,[4] to graze	paissant	pai (-s, -s, -t) paiss(-ons,-ez,-ent)	paiss-	paiss (-e, *etc.*)	pais paiss(-ons,-ez)	paîtr-	paîtr-			
Paraître, to appear	paraissant	parai (-s, -s, -t) paraiss (-ons, -ez, -ent)	paraiss-	paraiss(-e,*etc.*)	parais paraiss (-ons, -ez)	paraîtr-	paraîtr-	par (-us, *etc.*)	par (-usse, *etc.*)	paru
Plaire, to please	plaisant	plai (-s, -s, -t) plais(-ons,-ez,-ent)	plais-	plais (-e, *etc.*)	plais plais(-ons,-ez)	plair-	plair-	pl (-us, *etc.*)	pl (-usse, *etc.*)	plu
Prendre, to take	prenant	prend (-s, -s) pren (-ons, -ez) prenn (-ent)	pren-	prenn (-e, -es, -e, -ent) pren (-ions, -iez)	prends pren(-ons,-ez)	prendr-	prendr-	pr (-is, *etc.*)	pr(-isse,*etc.*)	pris
Rire, to laugh	riant	ri (-s,-s,-t,-ons, -ez, -ent)	ri-	ri (-e, *etc.*)	ri (-s, -ons, -ez)	rir-	rir-	r (-is, *etc.*)	r (-isse, *etc.*)	ri
Suivre, to follow	suivant	sui (-s, -s, -t) suiv (-ons,-ez,-ent)	suiv-	suiv (-e, *etc.*)	suis suiv(-ons,-ez)	suivr-	suivr-	suiv (-is, *etc.*)	suiv (-isse, *etc.*)	suivi
Taire, to keep silent[5]	taisant	tai (-s, -s, -t) tais (-ons, -ez, -ent)	tais-	tais (-e, *etc.*)	tais tais (-ons, -ez)	tair-	tair-	t (-us, *etc.*)	t (-usse, *etc.*)	tu
Traire, to milk	trayant	trai (-s, -s, -t, -ent) tray (-ons, -ez)	tray-	trai (-e, -es, -e, -ent) tray(-ions,-iez)	trais tray(-ons,-ez)	trair-	trair-			trait
Vaincre, to conquer	vainquant	vainc (-s, -s) il vainc vainqu (-ons, -ez, -ent)	vainqu-	vainqu(-e,*etc.*)	vaincs vainqu (-ons, -ez)	vaincr-	vaincr-	vainqu (-is, *etc.*)	vainqu (-isse, *etc.*)	vaincu
Vivre, to live	vivant	vi (-s, -s, -t) viv (-ons, -ez, -ent)	viv-	viv (-e, *etc.*)	vis viv (-ons, -ez)	vivr-	vivr-	véc,(-us, *etc.*)	véc (-usse, *etc.*)	vécu

[1] Conjugate in the same way: **exclure,** to exclude.

[2] Conjugate in the same way: all verbs in **uire,** except **bruire, luire,** and **nuire.**

[3] **Redire** has **redites** in 2d pers. sing., pres. ind., but **contredire, dénire,** etc., have the regular forms, **contredisez, dédisez,** *etc.* The imperfect of **maudire** is **maudissais** (with double **s**).

[4] **Repaître,** to feast, is conjugated in the same way, except that it has a past definite (**je repus,** *etc.*), and an imperfect subjunctive (**que je repusse**).

[5] Conjugate in the same way the compounds of this verb: **distraire,** to distract, etc.

PART II.

CHAPTER I.

The Definite Article.

304. A **noun** is said to be "determinate" when it represents an individual, a class of individuals or things, or a species, as distinct from other species, classes, or individuals.

Ex.: *Le livre de Paul.* (*Livre* represents here a special, determinate book.)

L'homme est le roi de la création. (*L'homme* is a species.)

Les roses blanches sont plus jolies que les roses rouges. (*Roses* represents in both cases a "class" of things: "white roses" or "red roses.")

La beauté est éphémère. "Beauty is ephemeral." (*Beauté* is a class of things — of attributes.)

305. The definite article, in French, must always precede a determinate noun, whether this be concrete or abstract.

306. Names of men, cities, and small islands do not generally take the article.

Ex.: *Victor Hugo, Paris, Londres, Sainte-Hélène, Madère.*

The exceptions are: *La Nouvelle Orléans, le Havre, le Mans, la Flèche, le Corrège,* etc.

307. Names of countries, rivers, mountains, oceans, seas, etc., also take the article.

Ex.: *La France, la Grèce, les Etats-Unis, la Seine, le Danube, les Alpes, le Mont-Blanc, l'Atlantique, la Méditerranée, la Manche,* etc.

308. In sentences like these: "In war and peace," "Fortune has wings," etc., where the English do not use the article, it would be a mistake to omit it in French.

Ex.: *Dans la paix et dans la guerre, La fortune a des ailes, "Maintenant donc ces trois choses demeurent: la Foi, l'Espérance, et la Charité, mais la plus grande est la Charité."*

309. As has already been stated (§ 45), the definite article is used instead of the possessive adjective whenever the latter is not indispensable for the clearness of the sentence.

Ex.: *J'ai froid* **aux** *pieds* (and not *à* **mes** *pieds*).

310. The definite article is used before titles, even when they are preceded by the words *Monsieur, Madame,* or *Mademoiselle.*

Ex.: *Monsieur* **le** *comte;*
Madame **la** *duchesse;*
Mademoiselle **la** *vicomtesse.*

311. If the article and an adjective precede a noun, the article stands before the adjective.

Ex.: *La grande maison;*
Le petit garçon;
Les jolis arbres.

312. The article is omitted:

(*a*). Before nouns preceded by adverbs of quantity, by *ni . . . ni, pas de.*

Ex.: *Beaucoup d'hommes;*
Pas d'argent, pas de Suisses;
Je n'ai ni or ni argent.

(and not: *beaucoup* **des** *hommes,* etc.)

(*b*). Before nouns, the meaning of which has been limited as to amount, quantity, or measure by other preceding words.

Ex.: *Une somme d'argent;*
Une tasse de café;
Un mètre de drap.
(and not: *une somme de l'argent*, etc.)

(*c*). Before nouns taken in a *partitive* sense, if these nouns are preceded by an adjective.

Ex.: *De bonne eau*, "*some* good water;"
De belles roses, "*some* beautiful roses;"
D'excellent vin, "*some* excellent wine."

(and not *de la bonne eau*, etc., which would mean "*of the* good water").

(*d*). In apostrophes.

Ex.: *O vieillesse ennemie! Œuvre de tant de jours, en un jour effacée.*

(*e*). In short proverbs.

Ex.: *Contentement passe richesse.*
Patience et longueur de temps
Font plus que force ni que rage.

(*f*). In an accumulation of words.

Ex.: *Adieu, veau, vache, cochon, couvée! . . .*
Femmes, moines, vieillards, tout était descendu.

(*g*). In some idiomatic expressions formed with *avoir*, *faire*, and a few other verbs.

Ex.: *J'ai faim,*
J'ai soif,
J'ai sommeil,
Il me fait peur,
Il se fait gloire d'être cet homme-là,

Vous me faites honte.
Prenez patience,
Etc., etc.

(*h*). In compound nouns.

Ex.: *La toile de fil,*
Du papier de soie,
Un cheval de bois,
Etc., etc.

313. Agreement of the article. — The article agrees in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies.

314. In these expressions:

La Saint-Barthélémy,
La Saint-Jean,
Sauce à la maître-d'hôtel,

and similar ones, the words *fête de, manière de,* etc., are understood, and so the complete expression would be:

La **fête de** *Saint-Barthélémy,*
La **fête de** *Saint-Jean,*
Sauce à la **manière d'un** *maître-d'hôtel,*
Etc., etc.

CHAPTER II.

THE NOUN.

315. **Nouns** may be common or proper.

316. Common nouns may be masculine or feminine. (Cf. § 11.)

317. Some nouns have one form for the masculine, and one for the feminine; the latter is formed in the same way as that of adjectives. (Cf. §§ 17, 210, 328 ff.)

Ex.: *le marchand, la marchande.*
le cousin, la cousine.
le lion, la lionne.
le chat, la chatte.

318. Masculine nouns ending in silent *e* change that *e* into *esse* for the feminine whenever they have a double form.

Ex.: *le nègre, la négresse.*
le tigre, la tigresse.

319. Some nouns may be masculine or feminine, but with an entirely different meaning, according to their gender.

The commonest are:

Masculine.		*Feminine.*	
le guide,	the guide.	**la guide,**	the reins.
le manche,	the handle.	**la manche,**	the sleeve.
le pendule,	the pendulum.	**la pendule,**	the clock.
le tour,	the turn, the tour.	**la tour,**	the tower.
le somme,	the sleep, nap.	**la somme,**	the sum.
l'aide,	the helper.	**l'aide,**	the help.
le critique,	the critic.	**la critique,**	the criticism.
le page,	the page.	**la page,**	the page (of a book).

320. Plural of nouns. — To the general rules, which have already been given (cf. §§ 35, 94), we will add the following:

(*a*). Nouns in *au*, *eu*, and the following in *ou*, — *bijou*, *caillou*, *chou*, *genou*, *hibou*, *joujou*, and *pou*, — add *x* instead of *s* for the plural.

(*b*). Nouns in *al* and *ail* change these endings into *aux*, but *bal*, *carnaval*, *chacal*, *éventail*, *gouvernail*, *régal*, *détail*, *portail*, and a few others, follow the general rule, and simply add *s*.

Ex.: *journal*, *journaux*.
bal, *bals*.
régal, *régals*.
bétail, "cattle," becomes *bestiaux*.

(*c*). The following nouns have two different forms of plural:

Aïeul becomes *aïeux* in the meaning of "ancestors," and *aïeuls* in that of "grandparents."

Ciel becomes *cieux* in the meaning of "skies," "heaven," and *ciels* in that of "sky of a picture," "vault of a grotto."

(*d*). Invariable words (conjunctions, prepositions, etc.) used as nouns have no plural form.

Ex.: *Avec des* ***si*** *on mettrait Paris dans une bouteille.* "With 'ifs' it would be possible to put Paris in a bottle" (for, *if* Paris was small enough, or *if* the bottle was large enough . . .).

(*e*). When a noun is used as object of another (the prepositions *de* and *à* connecting the two), it is put in plural or singular, according to whether it carries an idea of plurality or not.

Ex.: *Un panier de* ***pêches***, "a basket of peaches."
Un panier à ***pêches***, "a peach basket."
Un champ de ***blé***, "a wheat-field."

Un champ de melons, "a melon-patch."
Un fruit à noyau, "a drupaceous fruit."

321. Compound Nouns. — They can be formed:

(*a*). By two nouns joined by a hyphen: *chien-loup*, "wolf-dog."

(*b*). By a noun and an adjective: *coffre-fort*, "safe."

(*c*). By a noun and a verb, or any invariable part of speech: *tire-bottes*, "boot-jack;" *contre-projet*, "counter-project."

(*d*). By invariable parts of speech only: *un passe-partout*, "latch key;" *laissez-passer*, "pass."

322. The plural of compound nouns is formed as follows:

(*a*). In Cases (*a*) and (*b*), § 321, both parts of the compound noun take the mark of the plural.

Ex.: *des chiens-loups, des coffres-forts.*

(*b*). In Case (*c*), § 321, the noun alone is put in plural.

Ex.: *des contre-projets.*

(*c*). In Case (*d*), § 321, both parts of the compound noun remain invariable.

Ex.: *des passe-partout, des laissez-passer.*

323. When in Case (*a*), § 321, there is a preposition connecting the two parts of the compound word, the first part alone takes the mark of the plural.

Ex.: *un chef-d'œuvre, des chefs-d'œuvre*, "masterpieces." *un arc-en-ciel, des arcs-en-ciel*, "rainbow."

324. Foreign words. — (*a*). Those of very common use form their plural by the addition of *s*. Ex.: *un opéra, des opéras.*

(*b*). Latin words remain generally invariable, except *maximum* and *minimum* which become *maxima* and *minima.*

(*c*). Italian words change the last vowel into *i.*

Ex.: *cicerone, ciceroni; dilettante, dilettanti; lazzarone, lazzaroni.*

325. **Proper nouns.** — They have a plural form, only:

(*a*). When used to designate, *not* the people who have or had the name, but people *like* them.

Ex.: *les Molières sont rares,* "people *like* Molière are scarce."

(*b*). When they are the names of countries (*les Amériques, les Russies*), or of *historical* families (*les Borgias, les Bourbons, les Guises*).

CHAPTER III.

ADJECTIVES.

326. There are two classes of adjectives, — the qualifying and the determinative adjectives.

327. As we have said (cf. §§ 16, 17), adjectives have two forms, one for the masculine and one for the feminine, those ending in silent *e* in the masculine being the only exception.

328. Adjectives which do not form the feminine by the simple addition of a silent *e* are those ending :

(*a*). In *as, ais, el, eil, en, ès, et, ol, on, os, ot,* which double the final consonant before adding the silent *e.*

Ex. : *bon, bonne ; cruel, cruelle ; net, nette ; épais, épaisse ; gros, grosse ; coquet, coquette,* etc.

(*b*). In *x, eur, teur,* which change the *x* or *r* into *se.*

Ex. : *heureux, heureuse ; parleur, parleuse ; menteur, menteuse.*

(*c*). In *gu,* which take a diæresis on the final *e* of the feminine.

Ex. : *aigu, aiguë ; ambigu, ambiguë.*

(*d*). In *eau, ou* (the masculine form being *el* and *ol* when placed before a noun beginning with a vowel or silent *h*), which make their feminine respectively in *elle, olle.*

Ex. : *beau* (*bel homme*), *belle ; nouveau* (*nouvel an*), *nouvelle ; fou* (*fol*), *folle ; mou* (*mol*), *molle.*

(*e*). In *f,* which change *f* into *ve.*

Ex. : *neuf, neuve ; bref, brève ; veuf, veuve.*

(*f*). In *g*, whose feminine is in *gue*.

Ex.: *long, longue.*

(*g*). In *c*, which change *c* into *che* or *que*.

Ex.: *blanc, blanche ; public, publique.*

(*h*). In *er*, which, besides adding the silent *e*, take a grave accent on the final *e*.

Ex.: *altier, altière ; fier, fière.*

329. Exceptions to Case (*a*) § 328 —

(*a*). Adjectives derived from the name of a country: *français, française ; hollandais, hollandaise.*

(*b*). Six adjectives in *et :*

complet, complète.	*inquiet, inquiète*
concret, concrète.	*replet, replète.*
discret, discrète.	*secret, secrète.*

(*c*). *ras*, "shorn," the feminine of which is *rase.*

(*d*). *bigot, dévot, idiot*, and a few others in *ot*, which do not double the final consonant.

330. Exceptions to Case (*b*) § 328 —

(*a*). *Doux faux, roux*, the feminine of which is *douce, fausse, rousse.*

(*b*). Adjectives in *teur*, not derived from the present participle of a verb, and the three following: *exécuteur, inventeur, persécuteur*, which change *teur* into *trice* for the feminine.

Ex.: *accusateur, accusatrice ; corrupteur, corruptrice ; conducteur, conductrice.*

(*c*). The following:

enchanteur, enchanteresse,	*meilleur, meilleure,*
pécheur, pécheresse,	*majeur, majeure,*
vengeur, vengeresse,	*mineur, mineure,*

and others in *ieur*, which add a silent *e* only.

331. Exception to Case (*g*) § 328 —

Grec, feminine *grecque*.

332. The following adjectives have a feminine form of irregular formation:

Masc.,	**frais**,	*Fem.*,	**fraîche**,	fresh.
"	**malin**,	"	**maligne**,	malign.
"	**bénin**,	"	**bénigne**,	benign.
"	**favori**,	"	**favorite**,	favorite.
"	**coi**,	"	**coite**,	snug.
"	**absous**,	"	**absoute**,	absolved.
"	**dissous**,	"	**dissoute**,	dissolved.
"	**traître**,	"	**traîtresse**,	treacherous.
"	**tiers**,	"	**tierce**,	third.

333. Some adjectives which in Latin had only one form for both genders, as *grand* (Latin, *grandis*, masculine and feminine), followed in French the same rule up to the end of the fourteenth century. We see remains of this in expressions formed with the adjective *grand*, as, *grand'mère*, *grand'tante grand'rue grand'messe*, etc. The apostrophe which usage has placed after the adjective is a grammatical error.

334. *Nu*, "naked," "bare," and *demi*, "half," remain invariable when they precede the noun.

Ex.: *Nu-pieds*, "bare-footed;" *demi-heure*, "half an hour."

When these adjectives follow the noun, *nu* agrees in gender and number, but *demi* agrees in gender only.

Ex.: *Pieds nus, tête nue; deux heures et demie.*

(Notice that, in the first case, these adjectives are joined to the noun by a hyphen.)

335. Comparison of adjectives. — Aside from the rules given (§ 85, ff.) for the formation of the comparative and superlative degrees, we must add the following:

(*a*). The adjectives *mauvais*, "bad," *petit*, "small," can have an irregular comparative and superlative:

mauvais, bad.	**pire**, worse.	**le pire**, the worst.
petit, small.	**moindre**, less.	**le moindre**, the least.

(*b*). The **superlative absolute** — that is, the superlative without comparison — is formed by prefixing *très*, instead of *le plus*, to the adjective.

Ex.: *L'Amérique est* **très** *grande.*

(*c*). The superlative of inferiority is formed by prefixing the article to the comparative of inferiority.

Ex.: *Il est moins grand que son frère* (comparative of inferiority). *Il est* **le** *moins grand des enfants de M. X.*, "He is the least tall of Mr. X.'s children" (superlative of inferiority).

336. Place of the adjectives. — The general rule is that the adjectives in French follow the nouns which they qualify. This rule, however, has a great many exceptions, and is constantly modified by the French when reasons of euphony, or others, demand it.

Ex.: *Un livre jaune, un heureux mortel, un homme heureux.*

337. Adjectives referring to the size or dimension, age, beauty, or *moral* qualities of persons or things (like *grand, petit, vieux, jeune, beau, bon, méchant, mauvais*, etc.), generally *precede* the noun.

Ex.: *Un grand arbre, un petit livre, un vieux mur, un jeune chien, un beau tableau, un bon père, un méchant garçon, un mauvais homme.*

338. The meaning of some adjectives varies according to the position they occupy. Thus:

Brave homme = good, honest man.
Homme brave = brave, gallant man.

Grand homme = great man.
Homme grand = tall man.

339. The adjective *beau* (*belle*), before the words *père, mère, frère, fils, sœur*, etc., loses its own meaning, and gives those nouns meaning of "in law."

Ex.: *beau-père*, "father-in-law."
belle-mère, "mother-in-law."
beau-frère, "brother-in-law."
belle-sœur, "sister-in-law."

340. Qualifying adjectives form the plural in the same way as nouns. The feminine form, which always ends in *e*, simply adds *s* for the plural.

CHAPTER IV.

DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

341. They are divided as follows: Demonstrative, possessive, interrogative, numeral, indefinite.

For the demonstrative adjectives, cf. § 27 ff.

For the possessive adjectives, cf. §§ 44 and 136 ff.

342. The **interrogative adjectives** are:

SING.	PLURAL.	
Masc. **quel,**	*Masc.* **quels,**	what or which.
Fem. **quelle,**	*Fem.* **quelles,**	

343. **Numeral adjectives** are called "cardinal" or "ordinal," according to whether they refer to the number or to the order of persons and things. (Cf. §§ 98, 151 for cardinal numerals in general.)

344. The ordinal numerals are formed by adding *ième* to the cardinal numerals.

Ex.: *deux*, "two;" *deuxième*, "second;" *trois*, "three;" *troisième*, "third." *Deux* has also *second.*

345. When the cardinal numeral ends in silent *e*, this "e" must be dropped before adding *ième: quatre*, *quatrième;* a final *f* is changed into *v: neuf*, *neuvième; cinq* becomes *cinquième;* the ordinal of *un* is *premier;* except in compound ordinals, as, *vingt et* ***unième***, *trente et* ***unième***, etc., and not *vingt et* ***premier***, etc.

346. *Premier* is the only *ordinal* numeral used after the name of a potentate, or to designate the day of the month.

Ex.: *Charles premier; François premier: le premier janvier;* while, *Henri quatre* (not *quatrième*); *Charles six, Louis quatorze; Léon treize,* etc.; *le cinq janvier.*

347. *Cent* and *vingt* take the *s* of the plural, when they are preceded by a multiplying adjective, and not followed by a number.

Ex.: *quatre-vingts; trois cents.*

Otherwise they remain invariable.

Ex.: *Cent hommes; quatre-vingt-deux; trois cent-six.*

348. The most common **indefinite adjectives** are:

chaque,	each.	**même,**	same.
nul,	not any, no.	**tout,**	all.
aucun,	not any, no.	**autre,**	other.
tel,	such.	**quelque,**	some, a few.
plusieurs,	several.		

349. *Chaque* has no plural, while *plusieurs* has no singular; the plural masculine of *tout* is *tous.*

350. *Même* meaning "even," *tout* meaning "entirely," "altogether," "quite," and *quelque* meaning "about," "however," are considered as adverbs, and consequently remain invariable.

Ex.: *Les montagnes* ***même*** *les plus hautes, ne sont rien en comparaison du diamètre de la terre,* "Mountains, *even* the highest, are nothing in comparison to the diameter of the earth." *Mlle. Lefèvre est* ***tout*** *heureuse de voir son amie,* "Miss Lefèvre is quite happy to see her friend." ***Quelque*** *sages que soient les hommes, ils peuvent se tromper,* "However wise men may be, they are apt to err. *Il y a* ***quelque*** *trois ans que Monsieur X. est mort,* "It is *about* three years since Mr. X. died."

351. When *même, tout,* and *quelque* are placed before, or modify a noun or pronoun, they are adjectives, and follow the ordinary rules of agreement.

Ex.: *Les mêmes hommes*, the same men.
Tous les hommes, all the men.
Toutes les femmes, all the women.
Quelques hommes, some (a few) men.
Nous-mêmes.

CHAPTER V.

PRONOUNS.

352. Pronouns are divided into six classes: Personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. Cf. § 104 ff.

353. *Moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles,* are often used as disjunctive pronouns:

(*a*). When preceded by a preposition:

Ex.: *C'est à toi que revient l'honneur de la victoire,* "It is to thee that the honor of victory belongs."

A moi, comte, deux mots! "Here, count, two words!"

Avec eux il est toujours facile de s'entendre, "It is always easy to get along with them."

(*b*). In apposition:

Ex.: *Je ne veux pas qu'il vienne, **lui!*** "I do not want him to come, that man!"

(*c*). When a pronoun and a noun are subjects of the same verb:

Ex.: *Son **père** et **lui**, mon **frère** et **moi**, partons demain pour Paris.*

(*d*). In answer to a question, when the verb is understood:

Ex.: *Qui parle? — Lui,* "Who speaks? — He."

(*e*). When the subject does not immediately precede the verb:

Ex.: ***Lui**, que j'avais vu si faible, voulait maintenant courir à l'ennemi!* "He, whom I had seen so weak, wanted now to rush to the enemy!"

(*f*). After *c'est, ce sont.*

Ex.:

C'est / It is	**moi**, I.		Ce sont / It is	**eux**, they.
	toi, thou.			**elles**, they.
	lui, he.			
	elle, she.			
	nous, we.			
	vous, you.			

(*g*). For emphasis:

Ex.: ***Moi**, je vous l'ai toujours dit*, "*I* have always told you so."

(*h*). When the verb has *me, te, nous, vous,* and *se* as direct objects:

Ex.: *Il* ***se*** *donne à* ***toi.***

(*Moi* and *toi* become *m'*, and *t'* before *en* and *y*.)

354. *Se* corresponds to the English "himself," "herself," "to himself," "to herself," "to itself," "one's self," or "to one's self," "themselves," "to themselves."

Ex.: *Il se vante*, "He prides himself." *Elle se vante*, "She prides herself."

On se tue souvent par imprudence, "People are often killed by imprudence."

355. *Soi* has the same meaning, but with the difference that: (*a*) It never precedes the verb. (*b*) It relates to an indefinite object.

Chacun pour soi, "Each one for himself."

On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi, "One often needs (the assistance of) a smaller one than himself."

356. Combined with the adjective *même*, the disjunctive pronouns become:

moi	-**même**,	myself.	**nous**	-**mêmes**,	ourselves.
toi		thyself.	**vous**		yourselves.
lui		himself.	**eux**		themselves.
elle		herself.	**elles**		
soi		itself.			

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

357. (For these, cf. § 138 ff.)

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

358. They are:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. **celui,** *Fem.* **celle,** *Neuter* **ce, ceci, cela,**	this, that, this one, etc.	*Masc.* **ceux,** *Fem.* **celles,**	these, those.

359. These pronouns are always followed by the preposition *de*, by a relative pronoun, or by the adverbs *ci* and *là*. (Cf. § 29.)

Ex.: (*a*). by *de: Celui* **de** *vous qui refusera d'obéir, qu'on le fusille,* "The one of you who will refuse to obey, let him be shot." *Celle* **de** *ces demoiselles qui fera le plus de progrès recevra le prix d'honneur.*

(*b*). by a relative pronoun: *Celui* **qui** *met un frein à la fureur des flots.* "He who puts a check upon the fury of the waves." *De toutes les nations, la France est* **celle qui** *a le plus fait pour la liberté. Ce* **qui** *vous ennuie,* "That which bothers you." *Dites moi ce* **que** *vous avez fait,* "Tell me what (that which) you have done."

(*c*). by the adverbs *ci* and *là: Quel est votre livre? C'est celui-***ci**. *Quelle est la maison de votre frère? C'est celle-***là**. *On pourrait ainsi exprimer la différence entre Gladstone et Bismarck: Celui-***ci** *n'a rêvé que la grandeur matérielle de l'Allemagne — celui-***là** *a eu pour idéal d'avancer dans le monde le règne de la justice et le triomphe de la vérité.*

360. *Ce, ceci, cela,* refer only to inanimate objects. Ex.: *Regardez cela, savez-vous ce que c'est?* "Look at that, do you know what it is?"

361. *Ce,* however, when followed by the verb *être,* may be used to determine, as it were, the following noun, the verb

being in the number of that noun. Ex.: *C'est le livre, c'est mon ami*, etc.; *ce sont les livres, ce sont mes amis.* (As may be seen by these examples, *ce* is, in this case, independent of number and gender.)

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

362. They are:

Qui, que, quoi, dont, which have only one form for both genders and numbers, and *lequel* which, combined with the definite article and the prepositions *à* and *de*, becomes:

	Masc.	*Fem.*
SING.	**lequel,**	**laquelle,** which.
	duquel,	**de laquelle,** of which.
	auquel,	**à laquelle,** to which.

	Masc.	*Fem.*
PLUR.	**lesquels,**	**lesquelles,** which.
	desquels,	**desquelles,** of which.
	auxquels,	**auxquelles,** to which.

363. *Qui*, "who," "which," when not preceded by a preposition, is always used as subject.

Ex.: *L'oiseau **qui** chante, là-bas . . .*
*C'est nous **qui** parlons . . .*

(Notice that the verb agrees with the *antecedent*, and not with the relative.)

364. *Que*, "whom," "which," is used as direct object, and is never preceded by a preposition.

Ex.: *L'oiseau **que** vous voyez. Notre père, **que** nous aimons tant. Le bruit **que** vous entendez.*

(Two of these examples show that relative pronouns can sometimes be omitted in English, but *never* in French.)

365. *Quoi*, "what," is used after prepositions, and refers to some *idea* just expressed, or, interrogatively, to some indefinite thing or idea.

Ex.: *Etre heureux, c'est* **à quoi** *tout homme aspire.*
Travaillez: c'est **par quoi** *vous devez commencer.*
A quoi *pensez-vous?*

366. *Quoi* is also used in exclamations. Ex.: *Quoi! vous feriez cela!* (and in interrogations: *Quoi?* "what?" but as such it is not considered polite; cf. § 372, Interrogative Pronouns).

367. *Dont*, "of whom," "whose," "of which," is what we might call the genitive case of the preceding pronouns. It is used either for persons or things. Ex.: *La femme,* **dont** *le nom sera à jamais vénéré des Français,* "The woman whose name will forever be honored by the French." *La maison* **dont** *vous m'avez parlé,* "The house of which you have spoken to me." *Ces hommes,* **dont** *la postérité conservera les noms,* "Those men, whose names will be preserved by posterity."

368. In using *lequel* and its various forms the following should be kept in mind:

(*a*). It is better to use the simpler forms, *qui, que, quoi, dont*, whenever the clearness of the sentence does not require *lequel*, etc.; thus:

la maison (the house)	**qui est sur la colline,**	which is on the hill.
	que vous voyez,	which you see.
	dont vous parlez,	of which you speak.

is better than:

la maison	**laquelle est sur la colline.**
	laquelle vous voyez.
	de laquelle vous parlez.

But, in a sentence like this:

"*Le directeur de l'école* **dont** *je vous ai parlé,*" *dont* cannot be used, as it could not be understood whether it is about the "director" or about the "school" "I have spoken." We should use *duquel* if we wish to speak of

the "director," and *de laquelle* if of the "school." It would be best, however, to use a different construction, as relative pronouns make the sentence too long and awkward.

(*b*). French constructions being often different from the English, students must be careful in using the combinations of *lequel* with the prepositions *à* and *de;* thus:

L'ami **auquel** *je pense* (and not, *L'ami* **duquel** *je pense*, although we say in English, "The friend *of whom* I think). *Le maître* **auquel** *vous obéissez* (and not, *Le maître* **que** *vous obéissez*, although we say, "The master *whom* you obey," etc.).

369. Relative pronouns have always a *demonstrative*, where in English they would have a *personal* pronoun for antecedent.

Ex.: ***Celui*** *qui met un frein à la fureur des flots.*

370. Relative pronouns must always have an antecedent.

Ex.: ***Ce*** *que je fais*, "What I do." (Lit., *that which* I do.)

371. *Où*, "where," is often used for *dont*, *auquel*, *à laquelle*, *duquel*, *dans laquelle*, etc.

Ex.: *Le pays d'***où** *je viens* (or, *Le pays* **dont** *je viens*). "The country I come from." *Le bonheur* ***où*** *j'aspire*, "The happiness to which I aspire." *La maison* ***où*** *je suis* "The house in which I am."

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

372. All relative pronouns, with the exception of *dont*, can be used as interrogative; but as such:

(*a*). *Qui* can be subject, direct or indirect object.

Ex.: *Qui parle? Qui voyez-vous? A qui parlez-vous?*

(*b*). *Que* is used only as *direct* object.

Ex.: *Que voulez-vous? Que dites-vous?*

(*c*). *Quoi* is used for *que:* After prepositions (*De quoi parlez-vous?*): In exclamations and interrogations, when

the verb is understood: (*Quoi! se peut-il!* "What! is it possible!" *Quoi? vous voulez partir?* "What? you wish to go?")

373. Instead of the interrogative pronouns, the following idiomatic sentences are often used:

as subject { **qui est-ce qui?** who. (For persons only.) / **qu'est-ce qui?** what. (For things only.) / etc.

as direct object { **qui est-ce que**, whom. (For persons.) / **qu'est-ce que**, what. (For things.)

Ex.: *Qui est-ce qui chante?* "Who sings?" (Lit., "Who is it that sings?")

Qu'est-ce qui prouve que partiez ce soir, "What proves that you go away to-night?" (Lit., "What is it that proves" . . .)

Qui est-ce que vous prenez pour juge? "Whom do you take for judge?" (Lit., "Whom is it that you take for judge?")

374. *Est-ce que,* "is it that," is used to form the interrogation in the first person singular present indicative of monosyllabic verbs, or when this first person singular ends in silent *e,* as in verbs of Conjugation I.

Ex.: *Est-ce que je prends?* "Do I take?" *Est-ce que je veux?* "Do I wish?" *Est-ce que je parle?* "Do I speak?"

(*Parlé-je,* — with accent on the *e,* — is seldom used, but correct.)

375. As may be seen from these examples, the verb preceded by *est-ce que, qu'est-ce que,* etc., remains in the affirmative form.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

376. The commonest are:

VARIABLE.

aucun, none, not any, no.
chacun, each one.
quelqu'un, some one, somebody.
l'un, the one.
l'autre, the other.
l'un l'autre, one another.
certain, certain, some.
nul, not any, none.
tel, such, such a one.
tout, all.
quelque chose, something.

INVARIABLE.

on, one, they, people.
personne, nobody.
quiconque, whoever, whosoever.
quoi que } whatever,
quoi que ce soit que, } whatsoever.
autrui, other people (others than one's self).
rien, nothing.
plusieurs, several.

377. Some of these pronouns (*plusieurs, tel, tout, nul, certain, aucun*) are often used as adjectives.

378. *Aucun, rien, personne,* preserve sometimes the affirmative meaning they had originally.

Ex.: *Je ne veux pas qu'***aucun** *puisse me dire,* "I do not want *any one* to be able to tell me." *Il ne se peut pas qu'aucun arrive au port,* "It is impossible for any one to reach the port." *Personne oserait-il témoigner contre lui?* "Would some one dare to testify against him?" *Personne est-il mieux à même que moi de juger cette affaire?* "Is anybody better able than I to judge this question?" *Un rien l'effraie,* "Anything makes him afraid."

379. *Personne,* preceded by an article or adjective, becomes a noun of the feminine gender.

Ex.: *La personne qui vous remettra cette lettre,* "The person who will hand this letter to you." *Quelle bonne personne!* "What a good person!"

380. *Rien,* in the plural, means "trifles."

Ex.: *Des petits riens font souvent plaisir,* "Little trifles often please."

381. *On* (cf. § 39) is sometimes, especially after the words *où, que, si,* preceded by a so-called "euphonic" *l.*

Ex.: *Dites-moi où l'on parle français,* "Tell me where French is spoken."

Je veux que l'on se taise! "I want them (or you) to keep silent!"

Si l'on veut, "If people are willing."

382. Although alluding to any number of persons, *on* is always of the third person singular, and of the masculine gender, unless the sense of the sentence shows clearly that *on* refers to some person, or class of persons, in which case the *adjectives,* if there are any, take the number and gender of the person or persons referred to.

Ex.: *On est beau quand on* ***est jeune,*** "One is beautiful when one is young."

On ***parle,*** *à New-York, toutes les langues du monde,* "All the languages of the world are spoken in New York." But:

*On n'****est*** *pas toujours* ***belle,*** *madame,* "One is not always beautiful, madam."

Devant la mort, on ***est*** *tous* ***égaux,*** "We are all equal, before Death."

383. *On* can only be used as subject of a verb; should the pronoun be repeated with the same indefinite meaning, *vous, se, soi,* should be used in the objective case.

Ex.: *Pendant la retraite de Russie, quand* ***on*** *ne gelait pas, les Russes* ***vous*** *tuaient sans pitié,* "During the Russian retreat, when they did not freeze to death, they were pitilessly killed by the Russians."

On *a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que* ***soi.***

CHAPTER VI.

Verbs — Use of Tenses.

I. INFINITIVE.

384. The infinitive is the verbal noun; it is what we might call the verb's "family name." It is used in French *without* or *with* a preposition.

385. It is used *without* a preposition:

(*a*). When preceded by a verb in a personal tense:

Ex.: *Il* ***vient ouvrir*** *la porte,* "He comes to open the door."

Elle ***prétend être*** *malade,* "She pretends to be sick."

(*b*). In the beginning of a sentence, or as subject of a verb in a personal tense.

Ex.: ***Faire*** *et* ***dire*** *sont deux,* "It is one thing to speak, another to act."

Mourir *pour la Patrie est un beau sort,* "To die for the native land is a beautiful fate."

(*c*). When used as the direct object of a verb (the latter being expressed or understood).

Ex.: *Il croit aimer,* "He believes he loves." *Que voulait-il? — Mourir!* "What did he want? — To die!"

(*d*). After the verb *faire,* which, in such idiomatic constructions, means that the action expressed by the infinitive is not performed by the subject of the verb *faire,* but by some one else.

Ex.: *Je* ***fais bâtir*** *une maison,* "I have a house built."

Il ***fait pleurer*** *sa mère,* "He makes his mother weep."

Nous ***faisons faire*** *des réparations à notre maison,* "We have repairs made on our house."

(*e*). After the verb *aller*, used to express an *immediate* future.

Ex.: *Je vais partir*, "I am about to go away."
Nous allons chanter, "We are going to sing."

386. The infinitive is used with the preposition *de*:

(*a*). When in English we would have a present participle preceded by "of" or "from."

Ex.: *Dispensez-moi de chanter*, "Excuse me *from singing*."

Il se vante d'être très fort, "He boasts *of being* very strong."

(*b*). After impersonal expressions (or verbs) such as: *il est beau, il est possible, il est difficile, il convient*, etc.

Ex.: *Il est beau de mourir pour sa Patrie*, "It is beautiful to die for one's native land."

Il est quelquefois difficile de faire son devoir, "It is hard, sometimes, to do one's duty."

(*c*). Instead of the subjunctive (cf. § 234 ff.), after expressions or verbs containing an idea of fear, joy, regret, shame, surprise, wish, doubt, *if the subject is the same in the principal and in the subordinate clauses.*

Ex.: *Je crains de voir cet homme* (instead of, *Je crains que je ne voie cet homme*), "I fear to see that man."

Je me réjouis de pouvoir vous être utile (instead of, *Je me réjouis que je puisse vous être utile*), "I rejoice upon being able to be of service to you."

(*d*). After a verb expressing an order or request (like *commander, prier, demander*, etc.). When these verbs are *preceded by a pronoun* marking the person to whom the order is given.

Ex.: *Je vous demande d'écrire*, "I ask you to write."
Je vous ordonne de sortir, "I order you to go out."
Je vous prie de lire, "I beg you to read."

(*e*). Should these same verbs be followed by the *name* of the person to whom the order is given, etc., the subjunctive could be used instead of the infinitive.

Ex.: *Nous demandons* **à** ***M. Leblanc*** *d'aller* (or, *qu'il aille*) *chez le préfet*, "We ask M. Leblanc to go to the *préfet's* house."

(*f*). In the idiomatic expression, *venir de*, which marks an *immediate* past.

Ex.: ***Je viens d'****arriver*, "I have just come."
Il vient de *partir*, "He has just gone."

(*g*). In narratives, to give more force and vivacity to the sentence.

Ex.: *Et moi* ***de*** *me fâcher, et lui* ***de*** *me répondre*, "And I got angry, while he would answer me . . ."

(*h*). In connection with the following locutions:

à moins de,	except, in case of, unless.
avant de,	before.
de peur de,	for fear that, lest.
loin de,	far from.
au lieu de,	instead of.
à force de,	by much, by repeated, from continually.
près de,	about to.

Ex.: ***A moins de*** *courir, il n'arrivera pas*, "Unless he runs, he will not arrive."

"*Veillez et priez,* ***de peur de*** *tomber dans la tentation*," "Watch and pray, lest you fall into temptation."

A force de *répéter un mensonge, on finit par le croire*, "From continually repeating a lie, one finally believes it," etc.

387. The infinitive is used after the preposition *à:*

(*a*). After verbs expressing a tendency, a desire to reach an aim, for instance:

se destiner à,	to destine one's self to.
incliner à,	to be inclined to.

s'entêter à,	to be bent upon.
se borner à,	to limit one's self to.
s'abaisser à,	to lower one's self to.
se disposer à,	to get ready to.
se vouer à,	to devote one's self to.
chercher à,	to try to.
se décider à,	to come to a decision about.
s'appliquer à,	to apply one's self to.

Ex.: *Il* ***s'applique à*** *travailler,* "He applies himself to work."

Il ***s'entête à*** *écrire,* "He is bent upon writing."

Il ***s'abaisse à*** *mentir,* "He lowers himself to lying."

(*b*). After *avoir* and *être,* to express obligation or futurity.

Ex.: *J'ai beaucoup à faire,* "I have much to do."

C'est à savoir, "This remains to be known" (or, "That is to say").

388. It can be said, as a rule, that *à* precedes the infinitive when we have — or could have, in English — "to," "unto," "in reference to," "at," and "in," with the present participle.

Ex.: *Il s'habitue à souffrir,* "He accustoms himself *to* suffering."

Il persévère à travailler, "He perseveres *in* working."

Je me plais à écouter la musique, "I take pleasure *in* listening to music."

Il excelle à jouer, "He excels *at* playing."

389. The infinitive, and not the present participle, follows the prepositions

entre, between.	**pour,** in order to.
par, by.	**sans,** without.

Ex.: *Il y a loin* ***entre parler et agir,*** "There is a long distance between speaking and acting."

Sans ouvrir *le livre,* "Without opening the book."

390. *Après*, "after," is followed by the past infinitive.

Ex.: ***Après** avoir parlé, il s'assit*, "After having spoken (or, after speaking) he sat down." (Students must be very careful *not* to use the *present participle* after *après*, not to say, for instance: *Après parlant . . .*)

391. *En*, "in," requires the present participle.

Ex.: *En parlant*, "in speaking," "by speaking," or "while speaking."

***En donnant**, on se fait des amis*, "By giving, one makes friends for himself."

***En donnant**, il avait l'air heureux*, "In giving," or "while giving he looked happy."

CHAPTER VII.

VERBS (Continued).

INDICATIVE.

392. The indicative (cf. § 243) asserts a thing as certain, positive, real; it is the objective way of looking at things or expressing one's thought. As the use and meaning of the present tense offers little difficulty to students, their attention will be called more especially to the past tenses, whose various shades of meaning can only be rendered in English by the use of different constructions. The simple form, *Je parle*, (cf. § 23), corresponds to the three English forms, "I speak, I do speak, I am speaking." The English "I am speaking" has an equivalent, though more emphatic form, in the French ***Je suis en train de*** *parler.* This locution, *être en train de*, is used to emphasize the continuity of the action.

II. IMPERFECT TENSE.

393. The imperfect tense (cf. §§ 50, 52), is used:

(*a*). In referring to a past habit or custom.

Ex.: *Les Romains* ***portaient*** *de longs vêtements appelés toges,* "Romans wore long clothes called togas."

*Quand j'****étais*** *jeune, je m'****amusais*** *avec mes camarades, je* ***jouais*** *au soldat; nous* ***courions*** *dans les bois, nous* ***grimpions*** *sur les arbres,* "When I was young, I used to play with my comrades; we used to play soldiers, we used to run in the woods, and climb trees." *L'été dernier, nous* ***dansions*** *tous les soirs.*

(*b*). To describe, when we refer to some past scene or event.

Ex.: *La maison de mon père* **était** *entourée de verdure; le lierre en* **couvrait** *les murs et* **montait** *même sur une partie du toit,* "My father's house was surrounded with trees; its walls were covered with ivy, and this spread even over part of the roof."

Pendant les fêtes du Czar, à Paris, les rues **étaient** *tellement encombrées qu'il* **était** *impossible de circuler; les arbres mêmes* **ployaient** *sous le poids des curieux; des marchands de jouets* **offraient** *leurs services, vendant tout "au rabais,"* **disaient-ils**, "During the *fêtes* of the Czar, at Paris, the streets were so crowded that it was impossible to circulate; the trees themselves were bending under the weight of the curious; toy merchants offered their services, selling everything 'at reduced rate,' they said."

(*c*). To report a past action, not yet ended when another action took place.

Ex.: *Je* **sortais**, *quand j'ai rencontré votre frère,* "I was going out when I met your brother."

*J'***écrivais** *quand vous êtes entré,* "I was writing when you came in."

(*d*). In a subordinate clause, when the verb of the principal clause is in a past tense.

Ex.: *Il m'a dit que vous* **veniez**, "He told me that you were coming."

*Je vous ai écrit que j'***étais** *malade,* "I wrote to you that I was sick."

(*e*). After conditional *si*, when the condition expressed refers to some improbable or impossible state or action. (Cf. § 220.)

Ex.: *Si j'étais dans la lune, vous ne me verriez pas,* "If I were in the moon, you would not see me."

394. From what precedes it can be seen that the imper-

fect presents to the mind the idea of a succession of indefinite past actions or feelings: Is a habit anything but a series of repeated actions? Is not the appearance as well as the state of a person or object due likewise to a number of small actions or feelings, the beginning or the end of which cannot be determined?

III. PAST DEFINITE.

395. The past definite (cf. § 52) is the very opposite of the imperfect; it expresses *one single, isolated fact,* perfectly *definite* in its meaning. It corresponds to the Latin perfect. It is used:

(*a*). When the time in which the action took place is entirely past.

Ex.: *J'**allai** à Rome l'année dernière,* "I went to Rome last year."

*Il **vint** me voir hier,* "He came to see me yesterday."

(*b*). When the action took place at a certain time, perfectly known to us.

Ex.: *Il **mourut** hier à deux heures,* "He died yesterday at two o'clock."

(*c*). When the action of the verb is such that it cannot be performed again.

Ex.: *Cain **tua** son frère,* "Cain killed his brother."

(*d*). To relate historical facts.

Ex.: *Napoléon **fut vaincu,*** "Napoleon was vanquished."

*Corneille **naquit** à Rouen,* "Corneille was born in Rouen."

396. The past definite is very often replaced, in the conversation, by the past indefinite, although, as we shall see further, these two tenses differ in their meaning.

397. The following examples will show once more the essential difference between the imperfect and the past definite.

I. — *Pluton **était** sur un trône d'ébène: son visage **était***

pâle et sévère . . . la vue d'un homme vivant lui **était** *odieuse . . . à son côté* **paraissait** *Proserpine, qui* **attirait** *seule les regards et qui* **semblait** *un peu adoucir son cœur ; elle* **jouissait** *d'une beauté toujours nouvelle.* II. — *Télémaque . . .* **entra** *dans ce gouffre ; d'abord, il* **aperçut** *un grand nombre d'hommes . . . il y* **remarqua** *beaucoup d'impies et d'hypocrites . . . il* **vit** *plusieurs des anciens rois de Lydie . . . mais ce qui* **consterna** *davantage Télémaque, ce* **fut** *de voir. . . .*

In the *first* part, we see that all the verbs express a state: they *describe* the scene which Télémaque was witnessing, and, therefore, the verbs are in the imperfect.

The verbs of the *second* part relate one *action* each: Télémaque "entered," "noticed," "saw"; . . . something "struck" him with consternation — and that "something," "was," etc.

IV. PAST INDEFINITE.

398. The past indefinite as its name implies, expresses a past action, without any special reference as to the time in which it took place. The past indefinite, therefore, is used:

(*a*). To report a past action, whether this be completed or not; and whether the time (if any time is referred to) be entirely past or not.

Ex.: *J'ai beaucoup souffert*, "I have suffered much."

Nous nous sommes beaucoup amusés, "We have enjoyed ourselves very much."

J'ai beaucoup lu aujourd'hui.

Il est allé très souvent à New-York ce mois-ci, "He has gone to New York very often this month."

(*b*). To express a fact which is always true.

Ex.: *De tous temps, les mères ont aimé leurs enfants*, "At all times, mothers have loved their children." (*Aimèrent leurs enfants* would mean that mothers *did love* their children, but now love them no more.)

(*c*). Instead of the future perfect, in familiar sentences like this: *Dans cinq minutes j'ai fini*, "In five minutes I am through" (the strictly grammatical construction would be: *Dans cinq minutes j'aurai fini*).

V. PAST PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.

399. These two tenses are used to report a past action which occurred before another, also expressed.

(*a*). When used to express an *isolated* fact, the past perfect is generally preceded by the words *aussitôt que, dès que*, "as soon as"; *lorsque, quand*, "when"; *après que*, "after [that]."

Ex.: *Aussitôt que j'eus fini mon travail, je sortis*, "As soon as my work was over, I went out." *Lorsqu'il eut parlé, les applaudissements éclatèrent de toutes parts*, "When he had spoken, the cheers burst from all sides."

(*b*). The pluperfect, which is of much commoner use, is less precise in its meaning. The action it expresses may have taken place at *any* time previous to *that of the action* expressed by the other verb. Whenever it is used after the limiting words *aussitôt que, dès que, lorsque*, etc., it refers to a habit, or any idea akin to the ideas rendered by the *imperfect*.

Ex.: *J'avais fini mon travail quand je sortis*, "I was through with my work when I went out." (Nothing shows precisely *how long* "I had been through" when I "went out.") *Quand j'avais fini mon travail je sortais*, "When I was through with my work, I *used to go out*." (I wish to refer to some habit or custom I had in a time past.)

VI. FUTURE SIMPLE.

400. The future simple is used:

(*a*). As in English, to mark futurity.

Ex.: *Je viendrai vous voir*, "I shall come to see you."

(*b*). Instead of the imperative.

Ex.: "*Tu n'auras point d'autres dieux devant ma face,*" "Thou shalt have no other gods before me." "*Tu ne te feras point d'images taillées,*" "Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image."

401. In some sentences, where the English uses the present, the future must be used in French — especially after *quand, lorsque.*

Ex.: *Quand je serai à Paris, j'irai au Théâtre-Français,* "When I *am* in Paris, I shall go to the *Théâtre-Français.*"

402. The use of the future perfect offers no difficulty; it corresponds to the English, inasmuch as the future simple corresponds in the two languages.

VII. CONDITIONAL.

403. Besides the use of the conditional, which has been noted (cf. § 221 ff.), we have the following:

(*a*). After *quand, quand même,* meaning "even if," whether these words be expressed or not.

Ex.: *Quand même il pleuvrait, je sortirais,* "Even if it should rain, I would go out."

(*b*). In polite forms of asking for something.

Ex.: *Voudriez-vous me passer votre livre?* "Would you be so kind as to pass me your book?"

(*c*). In interrogative exclamations.

Ex.: *Oseriez-vous prétendre à la main de ma fille?* "Would you dare to have pretensions to the hand of my daughter?"

(*d*). To express a wish.

Ex.: *J'aimerais à voyager,* "I would like to travel."

VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE.

404. We will not add any remarks to those given in the first part of this book (cf. §§ 234 ff.) as to the use of

the subjunctive. Students should, by reading and conversation, familiarize themselves with the *idea* rendered by this mood.

405. IX. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

When a verb preceded by "conditional" *si*, "if," is

- In present indicative, → the verb of the dependent clause is: In future.
- In imperfect indicative, → the verb of the dependent clause is: In present conditional.
- In pluperfect, → the verb of the dependent clause is: In past conditional.

406.

When the verb of the *principal* clause, to be followed by a verb in subjunctive, is

- In present or future indicative, → the verb of the dependent clause must be
  - In present or past subjunctive.
- In one of the past tenses, or in the conditional, → the verb of the dependent clause must be
  - In imperfect or pluperfect.

CHAPTER VIII.

Participles.

I. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

407. The present participle (cf. §§ 63, 64) always ends in *ant*. But there is also a verbal form in *ant*, which must not be mistaken for the present participle. For instance:

Voyez-vous ces enfants courant dans la plaine? (*Courant*, here, is a participle.)

Monnaie courante "currency." (Lit., "running money.")

Chiens courants "hounds." (Lit., "running dogs.")

Courante and *courants* are verbal adjectives.

From these examples it will be seen that the present participle remains invariable, while the *verbal adjectives* agree, as any other adjective, in gender and number.

408. Verbal words in *ant* are present participles:

(*a*). When they have a direct object.

Ex.: *Les enfants aimant leur mère.*

(*b*). When they are preceded by the preposition *en.*

Ex.: *C'est en forgeant que l'on devient forgeron.*

(*c*). When a verb in a personal tense could be used in its stead.

Ex.: *Il y avait, dans la chambre, des hommes parlant haut, faisant beaucoup de gestes.* "There were in the room men speaking loud, making many gestures." (Instead of *parlant* and *faisant* we could say *qui parlaient* and *qui faisaient.*)

409. There are some words which, although pronounced alike, are spelled differently, according to whether they are verbal adjectives, nouns, or present participles.

The commonest of these are:

équivalant,	equaling.	**équivalent,**	equivalent.
différant,	differing.	**différent,**	different.
divergeant,	diverging.	**divergent,**	divergent.
excellant,	excelling.	**excellent,**	excellent.
négligeant,	neglecting.	**négligent,**	negligent.
présidant,	presiding.	**président,**	president.
résidant,	residing.	**résident,**	resident.
convainquant,	convincing.	**convaincant,**	convincing.
extravaguant,	raving.	**extravagant,**	extravagant.
fabriquant,	manufacturing.	**fabricant,**	manufacturer.
fatiguant,	fatiguing.	**fatigant,**	fatiguing.

II. PAST PARTICIPLE.

(Cf. §§ 170, 178–181.)

410. The past participle of reflexive verbs, although conjugated with *être*, follows the same rules as that of verbs conjugated with *avoir*. (Cf. § 170.) The reason is that, as has been said, *être* has really, in this case, the meaning of *avoir*.

Ex.: *Je me suis brûlé la main*, "I have burned my hand."

Elle s'est coupé deux doigts, "She has cut two of her fingers."

La main que je me suis brûlée, "The hand I have burned."

Les deux doigts qu'elle s'est coupés, "The two of her fingers she has cut."

Combien de doigts s'est-elle coupés? Elle s'en est coupé deux.

411. As a consequence of these rules, the past participle of *intransitive* verbs conjugated with *avoir* remains unvaried.

Ex.: *Les dix heures que j'ai marché*, "The ten hours I have walked."

412. When the direct object preceding the verb is itself preceded by words like *combien de, autant de, plus de,* or a collective noun (*une foule,* "a crowd," *une quantité,* "a quantity," *une masse,* "a heap,"), the participle agrees :

(*a*). With the direct object.

Ex. : *Combien de livres avez-vous lus ?* "How many books have you read ?"

La quantité des livres qu'il a écrits, "The quantity of books he has written."

(*b*). With the collective, when the sentence indicates clearly that it is to the *collection,* and not to the *individuals that compose that collection,* that the speaker wishes to call the attention.

Ex. : *Cette foule d'hommes, que vous avez vue,* . . . "That crowd of men which you have seen." . . .

413. The past participle followed by an infinitive remains invariable if this infinitive appears to be the object of the verb.

Ex. : *Les fleurs que j'ai vu cueillir,* "The flowers which I have seen picked."

Les vers que j'ai entendu déclamer, "The lines I have heard (some one) recite."

414. But when the object is the pronoun which precedes the verb, the past participle agrees with it.

Les enfants que j'ai vus cueillir des fleurs, "The children I saw picking flowers." *Les dames que j'ai entendues réciter les vers de François Coppée,* "The ladies I heard recite poems (lit., "lines,") of François Coppée."

415. A mechanical way for students to avoid mistakes in these cases is to ask themselves whether the noun represented by *que* could (§ 414) or not (§ 413) accomplish the action expressed by the infinitive. In § 413 it is evident that the flowers *cannot* "pick," while in § 414 the children *can* "pick" flowers.

416. It often happens that the infinitive is understood, but the rules remain the same.

Ex.: *Il m'a fait toutes les promesses qu'il a voulu*, "He made me all the promises he wanted to." (*Me faire* = "make to me," is understood).

417. When, instead of the infinitive, a dependent clause beginning with *que* follows the participle, this remains unvaried.

Ex.: *Les conseils qu'il a cru qu'il devait lui donner*, "The advice he thought he ought to give him."

(This construction is to be avoided, as the many relatives make the sentence heavy and inharmonious.)

CHAPTER IX.

PREPOSITIONS.

418. The commonest are:

à,	at, to.	**contre,**	against.
avant,	before.	**devant,**	before.
dans,	in.	**entre,**	between.
en,	in.	**malgré,**	in spite.
de,	of, from.	**par,**	by.
depuis,	since.	**parmi,**	among.
derrière,	behind.	**sans,**	without.
pendant,	during.	**sous,**	under.
pour,	for, to.	**sur,**	on, upon.
près de,	near.	**voici,**	here is.
vers,	toward.	**voilà,**	there is.

Some of these play so important a part in the construction of the language, that a special mention needs to be made here of their commonest meanings:

A.

419. *À* is used:

(*a*). To express movement *towards*, or presence *in*, a place (if that place is a city, a resort, a mountain, a river, or some American country).

Ex.: *Je vais à Paris*, *Je suis à Paris*, "I go to, I am in Paris."

Je vais aux eaux, "I go to a watering resort."

Il est au Mont Blanc, "He is at Mont Blanc."

Il est venu aux Etats-Unis.

If the name of the place *towards* which the movement is to be expressed is that of a continent, of a European country, the English "to" must be rendered by *en*.

Ex.: *Il vient* **en** *Amérique*, "He comes to America."

Nous allons **en** *Asie*, "We go to Asia."

(*b*). Before a noun which modifies in its appearance or structure another preceding noun.

Ex.: *Un monsieur à lunettes*, "A gentleman with eye-glasses."

Un fauteuil à roulettes, "A roller arm-chair."

(*c*). After the verb *être*, whenever this could be translated by "to belong to."

Ex.: *Ce livre* **est** *à mon frère*, "That book is my brother's (i.e., *belongs to* my brother)."

Nous sommes à vous dans un instant, "We are at your disposition in a minute." (Lit., "We *belong to* you in one instant.")

(*d*). Before a number expressing the time of the day and the age of a person.

Ex.: *A trois heures*, "At three o'clock."

A quinze ans, "At fifteen years old."

(*e*). With the meaning of "after the manner or fashion of."

Ex.: *À la parisienne*, "After the Parisian fashion."

Sauce à la maître-d'hôtel, "Sauce after the manner of a *maître-d'hôtel*."

420. The preposition *à* is used, moreover, in the formation of a very large number of idiomatic sentences, the meaning of which can only be learned by long practice in reading and conversation. (For the use of *à* with an infinitive, cf. § 387.)

DE.

421. *De* is used

(*a*). Before a noun which, in English, is — or could be — in the possessive case.

Ex.: *La maison de Jean*, "John's house."

Un abonnement d'un an, "A year's subscription."

(*b*). After adverbs of quantity or any words expressing measure, amount, etc.

Ex.: *Plus de pommes*, "More apples."

Un mètre de toile, "A yard of cloth."

Une tasse de café, "A cup of coffee."

Une somme d'argent, "A sum of money."

(*c*). Where the English would use "from."

Ex.: *Je viens de Paris*, "I come *from* Paris."

D'où vient la lumière du jour? "Whence (from where) comes the light of day?"

(*d*). To mark separation.

Ex.: *Il se sépare de moi*, "He separates himself from me."

(*e*). Before nouns expressing the material that a thing is made of. (If this *noun* could, in English, be made the first part of a compound noun.)

Ex.: *Un chapeau de paille*, "A straw hat." (Lit., "A hat of straw.")

Une table de bois, "A wooden table." (Lit., "A table of wood.")

For the use of *de* with an infinitive, cf. § 386.

EN — DANS.

422. *En* and *dans* have very much the same meaning; *en* (as well as *dans*, but without being followed by any article) is used to mark the place in which a person or thing is, especially if that place is a continent, a European country. Cf. § 419 (*a*). Yet, in these cases, *dans* is used when a more precise idea of limitation is to be given.

Ex.: *En chambre* "occupying, renting a room." (Lit., "in room, i.e., rooming.") *En France*, "in France."

Dans la chambre, "in the room" (we know the *one* room of which we speak).

Dans la France, "in France" (i.e., in *this one* country perfectly limited, and in *no other*).

423. *Dans* is always followed by some limiting word (the definite or indefinite articles, possessive adjectives, etc.), *en* is not. Hence the shade of meaning noted above.

424. Here are a few of the special meanings of *en :*

(*a*). *En* may serve to circumscribe a certain amount of time, in which case it is followed by a number.

Ex.: *En trois jours*, "In three days."

Dieu créa en six jours le ciel et la terre, "God created in six days heaven and earth."

(Cf. ***Dans*** *trois jours nous serons en hiver*, "In three days it will be winter.")

(*b*). *En* expresses sometimes the state of mind or health of a person.

Ex.: *Il est en colère*, "He is angry."

Il est en santé, "He is in (good) health."

(*c*). *En* expresses also the state of things.

Ex.: *Ce livre est en bon état*, "That book is in good shape."

Le verre est en morceaux, "The glass is (broken) into pieces."

Les marronniers sont en fleurs, "The horse-chestnut trees are in blossom."

(*d*). *En* may mean "as," "like," "in the manner of."

Ex.: *Mourir en brave*, "To die like a brave man."

(*e*). *En* precedes sometimes a noun marking the occupation that a person is engaged in.

Ex.: *En prières*, "in prayer."

425. As for other prepositions, their use corresponds — except in a few idiomatic sentences — to that of their English equivalents.

CHAPTER X.

ADVERBS — CONJUNCTIONS — INTERJECTIONS.

I. ADVERBS.

426. As to their meaning, adverbs are divided as follows :

Adverbs of place,	**dedans,**	inside, indoors.
	dehors,	outside, outdoors.
	ailleurs,	elsewhere.
	dessous,	underneath.
	dessus,	over, above.
	loin,	far.
	près,	near.
	y,	here, there.
	en,	from here, from there,
	etc.	
Adverbs of time,	**tantôt,**	presently, soon.
	souvent,	often.
	jadis,	of old, formerly,
	etc.	
Adverbs of quantity,	**guère,**	scarcely.
	si,	so, as.
	tant,	so much, so many,
	etc.	
Adverbs of affirmation,	**assurément,**	assuredly.
	certainement,	certainly.
	certes,	indeed,
	etc.	
Adverbs of negation,	**nullement,**	in no wise.
	ne . . . pas,	not,
	etc.	
Adverbs of order,	**d'abord,**	at first, first.
	ensuite,	afterwards, then.
	premièrement,	firstly.
	secondement,	secondly,
	etc.	

Adverbs of manner,	**bien,**	well.
	mal,	badly.
	agréablement,	agreeably.
	simplement,	simply,
	etc.	

427. The adverbs *plus, moins, autant, tantôt,* used in successive clauses, are to be translated as follows:

***Plus** on a, **plus** on veut avoir,* "**The more** one has, **the more** he wants."

***Moins** on fait, **moins** on veut faire,* "**The less** one does, **the less** he wants to do."

***Autant** l'on gagne, **autant** l'on dépense,* "**As** one gains, **so** he spends.

***Tantôt** il rit, **tantôt** il pleure,* "**Now** he laughs, **now** he cries."

428. The number of adverbs belonging to the last two classes (i.e., adverbs of order and of manner) is limited only by that of the adjectives expressing these ideas. For, in fact, adverbs can be made from a great many adjectives in the following way:

(*a*). By adding *ment* to the feminine of those adjectives.

Ex.: *Grand,* "large"; feminine, *grande;* adverb, *grande**ment.***

Heureux, "happy"; fem., *heureuse;* adverb, *heureuse**ment.***

Doux, "sweet"; feminine, *douce;* adverb, *douce**ment.***

(*b*). When adjectives have a masculine form ending in a vowel (but not in *eau* nor in *ou*), such as *joli, vrai, hardi, absolu,* the corresponding adverbs are formed by adding *ment* to the *masculine* form of the adjectives.

Ex.: *Vraiment, joliment, hardiment, absolument.*

(*c*). If the adjectives end in *ant* or *ent,* the corresponding adverbs are formed by changing these endings into *amment* and *emment* respectively.

Ex.: *Savant, savamment; fréquent, fréquemment.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

429. Adverbs, as well as adjectives, have three degrees of comparison. Their comparative and superlative degrees are formed as those of the adjectives, with the exception of *bien* and *mal*, whose comparatives and superlatives are respectively: *mieux, le mieux*, and *pis, le pis.* (Cf. § 84 ff.)

430. *Ne . . . que* means "only," "but"; *ne . . . plus* means "not any more," or "no more."

Ex.: *Je n'ai que deux livres,* "I have only two books."

Je n'ai plus de livres, "I haven't any books any longer."

M. Cleveland n'est plus président, "Mr. Cleveland isn't president any longer."

II. CONJUNCTIONS.

431. There are two classes of conjunctions; those of "co-ordination," which join together two words or independent sentences, and those of "subordination," which join a *subordinate* to a *principal* clause.

432. Conjunctions of co-ordination are: *et,* "and"; *ou,* "or"; *ni,* "neither"; *mais,* "but"; *or,* "now"; *car,* "for"; *donc,* "therefore, then"; *soit . . . soit* "whether . . . or."

433. Conjunctions of subordination are: *que,* "that"; *si,* "if, whether"; *comme,* "as"; *quand,* "when"; and their compounds, as *quoique, bien que, comme si,* etc.

434. *Que* is often used to avoid the repetition of a preceding conjunction.

Ex.: *S'il fait beau, et* **que** *vous veniez,* "If it is good weather, and you come." (Subjunctive follows *que* = *si.*)

Quand on est riche, et qu'on veut faire le bien, "When one is rich, and is willing to do good."

435. *Que* must always be expressed when the English "that" is understood.

Ex.: *Je pense* **que** *votre ami est arrivé,* "I believe [that] your friend has come."

436. *Si* meaning "if" must always be followed by a verb in the present, imperfect, or pluperfect indicative (cf. § 218); but when *si* means "whether," the verb which follows can be in any tense.

Ex.: ***Si vous alliez** à Paris, vous verriez le Louvre, mais vous ne savez pas **si vous irez**, "If* you *should go* to Paris, you would see the Louvre, but you do not know *whether* you *will go*."

437. Note the meaning of the conjunctions *et, ni, soit, ou,* when repeated:

***Et** le père **et** le fils sont morts de désespoir*, "Both the father and the son died from despair."

***Ni** l'or **ni** la grandeur ne nous rendent heureux*, "Neither gold nor grandeur makes happiness."

***Soit** l'un, **soit** l'autre*, "Whether the one or the other."

*C'est **ou** vous, **ou** moi*, "It is either you or I."

III. INTERJECTIONS.

438. The commonest are:

ah! bon!	ah! good!	**fi! fi donc!**	fie! for shame!
hé! ho!	hey! hi! ho!	**holà!**	hello!
ah! eh! oh!	ah! eh! oh!	**chut! paix!**	hush! quiet!

439. To these we might add a very large number of words used as interjections, although pertaining to other parts of speech, for instance:

allons! courage! ferme! mon Dieu!

440. This last class of interjections, if translated literally, would oftentimes have, in English, a meaning very different from that which they have in French (their meaning could, in English, be either stronger, profane, or even blasphemous). When found in reading, the general sense of the sentence will guide the student as to what the idiomatic meaning of these words is.

VOCABULARIES.

I.

FRENCH-ENGLISH.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb.
adv. pron. = adverbial pronoun.
art. = article ; **art. contr.** = contracted article.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
f. and **f.n.** = feminine noun.
im = impersonal.
interj. = interjection.
m. and **m. n.** = masculine noun.
m. f. = noun of both genders.
nu. = numeral.
p. p. = past participle.
pl., plur. = plural.
poss. = possessive.
prep. = preposition.
pron. = pronoun.
v. a. = transitive verb.
v. n. = intransitive verb.
v. a. n. = verb generally transitive, sometimes used intransitively.
v. n. a. = contrary to precedent.

NOTE. — In order to give as extended vocabularies as possible in a limited space, all words similar in the two languages (such as those ending in *tion*, *tor*, *ic*, etc.) have been given *only* in the *French-English* vocabulary.

à, prep., *at, toward, to, in.*
abaisser, v. a., *lower.*
abonnement, m., *subscription.*
abord (d'), loc., *at first.*
abreuver, v.a., *water* (an animal), *soak.*
absolu, adj., *absolute.*
absolument, adv., *absolutely.*
absous, p. p of **absoudre**, *to absolve.*
académie, f., *academy.*
accent, m., *accent, tune, song, voice.*
accepter, v. a., *accept.*
accourir, v. n., *hasten, come in haste.*
accusateur, m., *accuser.*
acheter, v. a., *buy.*
acquérir, v. a., *acquire.*
adieu, m., *adieu, good-by.*
admettre, v. a., *admit.*
administration, f., *administration.*
administratif, adj., *administrative.*
administrer, v. a., *administer.*
admirable, adj., *admirable.*
admirer, v. a., *admire.*
adoucir, v. a., *soften.*
adresser, v. a., *address.*
adversité, f., *adversity.*
affaire, f., *business, question.*
afin (que), adv., *so that.*
âge, m., *age,*

agir, v. n., *act.*
agonie, f., *agony;* **être à l'agonie**, *to be dying.*
agréablement, adv., *agreeably.*
agréer, v. a., *accept.*
ah, interj., *ah.*
aide, m., *helper*, f., *help.*
aider, v. a., *help.*
aïeul, m., *grandparent;* **aïeux**, pl., *ancestors.*
aigu, adj., *acute.*
aile, f., *wing.*
ailleurs, adv., *elsewhere.*
aimable, adj., *kind, amiable, lovely.*
aimer, v. a., *love, like.*
aîné, adj., *elder.*
ainsi, adv., *thus, so.*
air, m., *air, mien.*
allemand, adj., *German.*
aller, v. n., *go, run* (in speaking of a train, etc.); **s'en aller**, *to go away,*
allons (imperat. of preceding), *let us go; come; well; agreed.*
alors, adv., *then.*
alphabet, m., *alphabet.*
altier, adj., *haughty.*
amabilité, f., *kindness, amiability.*
amasser, v. a., *gather, collect.*
ambigu, adj., *ambiguous.*
âme, f., *soul.*
améliorer, v. a., *improve.*
amener, v. a., *lead, bring.*
ami, m., *friend,* **amie**, f., *lady friend.*
amitié, f., *friendship;* **amitiés**, (pl.), *regards.*
amour, m., *love.*
amuser, v. a., *amuse, divert;* **s'amuser**, *to enjoy one's self.*
an, m., *year.*
ancien, adj., *former, ancient, old.*
âne, m., *donkey.*
anglais, adj., *English, Englishman.*
animal, m., *animal.*
anneau, m., *ring.*
année, f., *year.*
annexer, v. a., *annex.*
annexion, f., *annexation.*
anniversaire, m., *anniversary, birthday.*
annulaire, m., *ring-finger.*
anticiper, v. a. n., *anticipate, forestall.*
antique, adj., *antique, ancient, former.*
août, m., *August,*
apercevoir, v. a., *perceive.*
appartement, m., *apartment.*
appartenir, v. n., *belong to.*
appeler, v. a., *call.*
applaudissement, m., *applause, cheers.*
appliquer, v. a., *apply;* **s'appliquer à**, *to apply one's self to.*
apporter, v. a., *bring.*
apprendre, v. a., *learn.*
approcher, v. a., *bring near;* **s'approcher**, *get near, approach.*
après, prep., *after;* **après-demain**, *day after to-morrow.*
aquarium, m., *aquarium.*
arbre, m., *tree.*
arc, m., *bow;* **arc-en-ciel**, *rainbow.*
argent, m., *silver, money.*
arithmétique, f., *arithmetic.*
arme, f., *arm, weapon.*
armer, v. a., *arm;* **s'armer**, *take up arms.*
arrêter, v. a., *stop;* **s'arrêter**, *stop.*
arriver, v. n., *arrive.*
arrondissement, m., *district, ward.*
artiste, m. f., *artist.*
asphalte, m., *asphalt.*
aspirer, v. n., *aspire.*
assemblée, f., *assembly.*
assembler, v. a., *assemble;* **s'assembler**, *come together, assemble.*
asseoir (s'), *sit, sit down.*
assez, adv., *enough.*
assidu, adj., *assiduous, faithful.*
assimiler, v. a., *assimilate.*
assister, v. a., *assist;* v. n., *attend.*
assurance, f., *assurance, insurance.*
assurément, adv., *assuredly.*
attendre, v. a., *wait* (for), *expect;* **s'attendre à**, *expect.*
attirer, v. a., *attract.*
au, aux, art. contr. (cf. § 12).
aucun, pron., *none.*
aujourd'hui, adv., *to-day, nowadays.*
auparavant, adv., *previously, before.*
aussi, adv., *also, as.*
aussitôt, adv., *as soon;* **aussitôt que**, conj., *as soon as.*
autant, adv., *as much, as many.*

auteur, m., *author.*
automne, m., *autumn.*
autre, pron., *other.*
autrefois, adv., *formerly, of old.*
autrui, pron., *other people, others than one's self.*
avancer, v. a. n., *advance, go forward, bring* or *put forward* or *forth.*
avant, prep., *before;* **avant-hier**, *day before yesterday.*
avec, prep., *with, by.*
avenir, m., *future.*
avertir, v. a., *inform, warn.*
avoir, v. a., *have.*
avril, m., *April.*

B.

bachelier, m., *bachelor.*
bague, f., *ring.*
bâiller, v. n., *yawn.*
bal, m., *ball.*
banc, m., *bench.*
bandeau, m., *band, bandage.*
barreau, m., *bar.*
bataille, f., *battle.*
bataillon, m., *battalion.*
bateau, m., *boat;* —— **à roues**, *side wheeler;* —— **à hélice**, *screw steamer;* —— **à voiles**, *sailing-vessel;* —— **à vapeur**, *steamer.*
bâtir, v. a., *build.*
bâton, m., *stick.*
battre, v. a., *beat;* **se battre**, *fight.*
baudet, m., *donkey.*
beau, belle, adj., *beautiful, handsome* (**beau-frère, belle-mère**, *etc.*, cf. §§ 209, 339).
beaucoup, adv., *much, many.*
beauté, f., *beauty.*
bénin, adj., *benign.*
bénir, v. a., *bless.*
besoin, m., *need.*
bestiaux, m. pl. (see **bétail**).
bétail, m., *cattle;* pl. **bestiaux.**
bête, f., *beast, animal.*
beurre, m., *butter.*
bien, adv., *well;* n. m., *the good* or *goods;* **bien que**, *although.*
bientôt, adv., *very soon, soon.*
bière, f., *beer.*
bigot, adj., *bigoted;* n. m., *bigot.*
bijou, m., *jewel.*
billet, m., *ticket, note.*
bissextile (année-), *leap-year.*
blanc, adj., *white.*
blé, m., *wheat.*
bleu, adj., *blue.*
boire, v. a., *drink.*
bois, m., *wood, grove.*
boîte, f., *box;* **boîte aux lettres**, *letter-box.*
bon, interj., *good! well!*
bon, interj., *good.*
bonheur, m., *happiness.*
bord, m., *edge;* **à bord**, *on board.*
borner, v. a., *limit.*
bottine, f., *boot, shoe.*
bouche, f., *mouth.*
boucher, m., *butcher.*
boussole, f., *compass.*
bouteille, f., *bottle.*
bras, m., *arm.*
brave, adj., *brave, good, honest.*
bref, adj., *short, brief.*
bride, f., *bridle.*
brillant, adj., *brilliant, shining.*
brosser, v. a., *brush.*
bruit, m., *noise.*
brûler, v. a., *burn.*
bureau, m., *office;* **bureau de tabac**, *tobacco-store.*

C.

ça, that.
cabine, f., *cabin.*
café, m., *coffee, café.*
caillou, m., *pebble.*
camarade, m. f., *comrade.*
campagne, f., *country* (as opposed to city).
canari, m., *canary-bird.*
canif, m., *penknife.*
canton, m., *canton, sub-district.*
capitaine, m., *captain.*
capitale, f., *capital.*
capitulation, f., *capitulation.*
caprice, m., *caprice, fancy.*
car, conj., *for.*
caractère, m., *character.*
caractériser, v. a., *characterise.*
cardinal, adj., *cardinal.*
carnaval, m., *carnival.*

carrière, f., *career.*
casquette, f., *cap.*
casser, v. a., *break.*
cause, f., *cause, reason.*
cave, f., *cellar.*
ce, adj. and pron., *this, that;* ceci, *this;* cela, *that* (ces, cet, cette, *etc.* cf. §§ 27, 360, 361).
cédille, f., *cedilla.*
célèbre, adj., *celebrated, famous.*
celle (see celui).
celui, celle, pron., *this* or *that one* (cf. §§ 358, 359).
cent, nu., *hundred, one hundred.*
cercueil, m., *coffin.*
certain, adj., *certain.*
certainement, adv., *certainly.*
certes, adv., *indeed, assuredly.*
ceux (cf. celui).
chacal, m., *jackal.*
chacun, pron., *every one, each.*
chaise, f., *chair.*
chaleur, f., *heat.*
chambre, f., *room;* chambre des députés, *chamber of deputies* in Paris; chambre à coucher, *bedroom.*
champ, m., *field.*
chanson, f., *song.*
chant, m., *song.*
chanter, v. a., *sing.*
chapeau, m., *hat.*
chapelain, m., *chaplain.*
chaque, adj., *each.*
charbon, m., *coal.*
charité, f., *charity.*
charme, m., *charm.*
charmé, (p. p. of charmer), *charmed.*
chasse, f., *hunt, chase.*
chat, m., *cat.*
château, m., *castle.*
chaud, adj., *warm.*
chauffer, v. a., *warm* or *heat;* se chauffer, *to warm one's self.*
chef, m., *chief;* chef de gare, *station-master;* chef-d'œuvre, *masterpiece.*
chemin, m., *road, way;* chemin de fer, *railroad.*
cheminée, f., *chimney, fireplace.*
cher, adj., *dear, expensive.*
chercher, v. a., *look for, seek;* chercher à, *try to.*
chéri, adj., *cherished, dear.*
cheval, m., *horse.*
chez, prep., *at* or *to the house* (home) or *store of* (cf. § 160).
chien, m., *dog;* chien-courant, *hound;* chien-loup (cf. § 321).
chose, f., *thing;* quelque chose, *something.*
chou, m., *cabbage.*
christianisme, m., *Christianity.*
chut, interj., *hush.*
chute, f., *fall.*
ci, adv., *here.*
ciel, m., *sky, heaven, canopy;* cieux (poet. pl.).
cinq, nu., *five.*
cinquante, nu., *fifty.*
cinquième, nu., *fifth.*
circonflexe, adj., *circumflex.*
circonstance, f., *circumstance.*
circuler, v. n., *circulate.*
citoyen, m., *citizen.*
clair, adj., *clear;* m. clair de lune, *moonlight.*
clarté, f., *clearness.*
clef, f. (also clé), *key.*
clocher, m., *spire, cupola.*
clou, m., *nail.*
cocher, m., *coachman.*
cochon, m., *pig.*
cœur, m., *heart.*
coffre, m., *coffer;* coffre-fort, *safe* (cf. § 321).
cohorte, f., *cohort.*
coi, adj., *snug.*
col, m., *collar.*
colère, f., *anger.*
collège, m., *college.*
collègue, m., *colleague.*
colline, f., *hill.*
coloré (p. p. of colorer), *colored, brilliant.*
combattre, v. a., *fight.*
combien, adv., *how much* (or *many*).
combinaison, f., *combination.*
comédie, f., *comedy.*
commander, v. a., *command, order.*
comme, conj. and adv., *as, like, as well as.*
commencer, v. a., *begin.*
comment, adv., *how.*

commissionnaire, m., *messenger.*
commune, f., *township.*
compagne, f., *companion.*
compagnie, f., *company.*
compagnon, m., *companion.*
comparaison, f., *comparison.*
comparatif, adj., *comparative.*
compatriote, m. f., *compatriot, countryman.*
complet, adj., *complete.*
complice, m., *accomplice.*
compliment, m., *compliment.*
complimenteur, m., *flatterer.*
composer, v. a., *compose.*
comprendre, v. a., *comprehend, understand.*
compte, m., *account, bill.*
compter, v. a., *count.*
comte, m., *count.*
concevoir, v. a., *conceive.*
concret, adj., *concrete.*
conducteur, m., *conductor.*
conduire, v. a., *lead, conduct.*
confesseur, m., *confessor.*
confession, f., *confession.*
conjurer, v. a. n., *conspire, conjure.*
connaître, v. a., *know, be acquainted with.*
conseil, m., *advice, council.*
conserver, v. a., *preserve.*
considérer, v. a., *consider.*
consoler, v. a., *console.*
consternation, f., *consternation.*
consterner, v. a., *dismay, strike with consternation.*
constitution, f., *constitution.*
constitutionnel, adj., *constitutional.*
consulat, m., *consulate.*
conte, m., *story, tale.*
contemporain, adj., *contemporaneous, contemporary.*
content, adj., *content, glad.*
contentement, m., *contentment, satisfaction.*
continuité, f., *continuity.*
contraire, adj., *contrary.*
contre, prep., *against;* contre-projet (cf. § 321).
convaincant, adj., *convincing.*
convenir, v. n., *behoove.*
convention, f., *convention.*
coquet, adj., *coquettish.*
cordial, adj., *cordial.*
cordialement, adv., *cordially.*
cordonnier, m., *shoemaker.*
correspondance, f., *correspondence.*
corridor, m., *corridor, hall.*
corriger, v. a., *correct, chastise;* se corriger, *to reform.*
corrupteur, m., *corrupter.*
côté, m., *side;* à côté de, *by the side of.*
côte, f., *rib.*
coucher, v. a., *lay down;* se coucher, *lie down, retire.*
coudre, v. a., *sew.*
couleur, f., *color.*
coup, m., *stroke, blow;* coup d'état, *coup-d'état, unexpected state measure.*
couper, v. a., *cut.*
courage, m., *courage;* interj., *courage.*
couramment, adv., *fluently.*
courir, v. n. a., *run; run after.*
cousin, m., *cousin.*
couteau, m., *knife.*
coûter, v. n., *cost.*
couvée, f., *brood.*
couvert (p. p. of couvrir).
couvrir, v. a. *cover.*
craie, f., *chalk.*
craindre, v. a., *fear.*
crayon, m., *pencil.*
création, f., *creation.*
créer, v. a., *create.*
crème, f., *cream.*
cri, m., *cry.*
critique, m., *critic;* f., *criticism.*
critiquer, v. a., *criticise.*
croire, v. a., *believe.*
croix, f., *cross.*
cru (p. p. of croire).
cruel, adj., *cruel.*
cueillir, v. a., *pick.*
cuiller (or cuillère), *spoon.*
cuisine, f., *kitchen.*
cuisinier, m., cuisinière, f., *cook.*
curieux, adj., *curious.*
czar (also tsar), m., *czar.*

D.

dame, f., *lady.*
dangereux, adj., *dangerous.*

danois, adj., *Danish, Dane.*
dans, prep., *in, into.*
danser, v. n. a., *dance.*
date, f., *date.*
davantage, adv., *more, still more.*
de, prep., *of, from, out of,* etc.
débuter, v. n. a., *begin, make a "debut."*
décembre, m., *December.*
décevoir, v. a., *deceive.*
déchirer, v. a., *tear.*
décider, v. a., *decide;* se décider à, *resolve, come to a decision.*
décision, f., *decision.*
déclamer, v. a. n., *declaim, recite.*
découvrir, v. a., *uncover, discover, show up.*
dedans, adv., *inside of, within, indoors.*
défendre, v. a. n., *forbid, ward off.*
défenseur, m., *defender.*
dehors, adv., *without, outdoors.*
déjà, adv., *already.*
déjeuner, v. n., *breakfast.*
déjeuner, m., *breakfast.*
demain, adv., *to-morrow.*
demander, v. a., *ask, demand.*
demeure, f., *dwelling, home.*
demeurer, v. n., *to live, dwell, reside, remain.*
demi, adj., *half.*
démocratie, f., *democracy.*
demoiselle, f., *young lady.*
département, m., *department.*
dépenser, v. a., *spend.*
déplorer, v. a., *deplore, lament.*
depuis, prep., *since, from.*
député, m., *representative, congressman.*
dernier, adj., *last, latter.*
derrière, prep., *behind.*
des, art. contr., *of the, from the,* etc.
descendre, v. n., *descend, go* or *come down.*
description, f., *description.*
desespoir, m., *despair.*
désirer, v. a., *wish, desire.*
despote, m., *despot.*
dessous, prep., *under, beneath, underneath.*
dessus, prep., *above, over.*
destinée, f., *destiny.*
destiner, v. a., *destine.*
détail, m., *detail, retail.*
détruire, v. a., *destroy.*
deux, nu., *two.*
deuxième, nu., *second.*
devant, prep. and adv., *before, in front of.*
devenir, v. n., *become.*
devoir, m., *duty.*
devoir, v. a., *owe.*
dévot, adj., *devout.*
dévouer, v. a., *devote.*
diamètre, m., *diameter.*
dictionnaire, m., *dictionary.*
diète, f., *diet, low diet.*
Dieu, m., *God.*
différence, f., *difference.*
différent, adj., *different.*
difficile, adj., *difficult.*
difficilement, adv., *hardly, with difficulty.*
dilettante, (pl. dilettanti), m., *dilettante.*
diligence, f., *diligence; stage-coach.*
diligent, adj., *diligent, industrious.*
dimanche, m., *Sunday.*
diner, v. n., *dine, take dinner.*
dire, v. a., *say, tell.*
directeur, m., *director.*
directoire, m., *directory.*
discours, m., *discourse.*
discret, adj., *discreet.*
dispenser, v. a., *dispense, excuse.*
disposer, v. a. n., *dispose, arrange;* se disposer à, *get ready to.*
dissous, adj., *dissolved, melted* (also p. p. of dissoudre, *dissolve*).
divergent, adj., *divergent.*
divin, adj., *divine.*
diviser, v. a., *divide.*
dix, nu., *ten.*
dix-huit, nu., *eighteen;* dix-neuf, *nineteen,* etc.
dixième, nu., *tenth.*
docteur, m., *doctor.*
doigt, m., *finger.*
domestique, m. f., *servant.*
donc, adv., *therefore, then,* etc. (cf. § 161).
donner, v. a., *give.*
dont, pron., *of whom, from whom* (cf. § 367).

dormir, v. n., *sleep.*
dos, m., *back.*
doucement, adv., *softly, sweetly, slowly.*
doux, adj., *sweet, tender.*
douze, nu., *twelve.*
douzième, nu., *twelfth.*
dramatique, adj., *dramatic.*
drap, m., *cloth.*
drapeau, m., *flag.*
du, art. contr., *some.*
duchesse, f., *duchess.*
durée, f., *duration.*
durer, v. n., *last.*

E.

eau, f., *water;* pl., *watering resort.*
ébène, m., *ebony.*
éclater, v. n., *burst forth;* éclater, de rire, *burst out laughing.*
éclore, v. n., *open, bud, hatch.*
école, f., *school.*
écolier, m., *pupil, scholar.*
écouter, v. a., *listen.*
écrire, v. a., *write.*
écrivain, m., *writer.*
édifice, m., *edifice.*
effacer, v. a., *efface, erase.*
effort, m., *effort.*
effrayer, v. a., *frighten.*
égal, adj., *equal.*
egalement, adv., *equally.*
égaler, v. a., *equal.*
église, f., *church.*
égorger, v. a., *slaughter, slay, cut the throat of.*
eh, interj., *eh.*
élégance, f., *elegance.*
élégant, adj., *elegant.*
élevé, adj., *high, expensive;* bien élevé, *well bred;* mal élevé, *ill bred.*
élève, m., *pupil, scholar.*
élire, v. a., *elect.*
elle, pron., *she;* elle-même, *herself;* elles-mêmes, *themselves.*
embarquer, v. a., *embark;* s'embarquer, *embark, sail.*
empêcher, v. a., *prevent;* s'empêcher de, *forbear, refrain, keep from.*
empereur, m., *emperor.*
empire, m., *empire.*
employé, m., *employee.*
empressé, adj., *earnest, eager, sincere, best.*
ému, adj., *moved, of emotion.*
en, adv. pron., *some, of it, from here* or *there, in the manner of,* etc.
en, prep., *in, by, at, into,* etc.
enchaîner, v. a., *chain, shackle, fetter.*
enchanteur, m., *enchanter.*
encombrer, v. a., *obstruct, block up, crowd.*
encore, adv., *still, yet.*
encre, f., *ink.*
endroit, m., *place.*
enfant, m. f., *child.*
enfin, adv., *finally, but, at last.*
ennemi, *m., enemy.*
ennuyer, v. a., *bore;* s'ennuyer, *to be bored.*
enrichir, v. a., *enrich.*
ensemble, adv., *together.*
ensuite, adv., *afterwards, then.*
entendre, v. a., *hear;* s'entendre avec, *to get along with.*
entêter (s') *to be bent upon.*
entier, adj., *whole, entire.*
entourer, v. a., *surround.*
entrave, f., *shackle.*
entre, prep., *between.*
entrer, v. n., *enter.*
environ, adv., *about;* m. pl., *environs.*
environner, v. a., *surround.*
envoyer, v. a., *send.*
épais, adj., *thick.*
épargner, v. a., *spare.*
épeler, v. a., *spell.*
éphémère, adj., *ephemeral.*
épicier, m., *grocer.*
épigramme, f., *epigram.*
épique, adj., *epic.*
épitre, f., *epistle.*
époque, f., *epoch.*
épouvanter, v. a., *terrorize.*
équivalent, adj., *equivalent.*
esclavage, m., *slavery.*
esclave, m. f., *slave.*
espagnol, adj., *Spanish.*
espérance, f., *hope.*
espérer, v. a., *hope.*

espoir, m., *hope.*
esprit, m., *wit, spirit.*
essentiellement, adv., *essentially.*
est, m., *east.*
et, conj., *and;* et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
établir, v. a., *establish.*
établissement, m., *establishment, institution.*
état, m., *state.*
été, m., *summer.*
étendard, m., *standard, flag, banner.*
étonner, v. a., *astonish, surprise;* s'étonner, *wonder, be surprised.*
être, v., aux., *be;* m., *being.*
étude, f., *study.*
étudier, v. a., *study.*
eux, pron., *they, them;* eux-mêmes, *themselves.*
éventail, m., *fan.*
éviter, v. a., *avoid.*
excellent, adj., *excellent.*
exceller, v. n., *excel.*
exciter, v. a., *excite.*
exécuteur, m., *executor.*
exécutif, adj., *executive.*
exécution, f., *execution.*
exemple, m., *example.*
exercer, v. a., *exercise, exert, drill.*
exercice, m., *exercise.*
exiger, v. a., *exact, demand.*
expirer, v. n., *expire.*
exposition, f., *exposition.*
express, m., *express train.*
expression, f., *expression.*
exprimer, v. a., *express.*
extravagant, adj., *extravagant.*

F.

fable, f., *fable.*
fabricant, m., *manufacturer.*
fabuliste, m., *fabulist.*
face, f., *face;* en face de, *opposite.*
fâché, adj., *sorry, angry.*
fâcher, v. a., *make angry;* se fâcher, *get angry.*
facile, adj., *easy.*
facilement, adv., *easily.*
facilité, f., *facility, ease.*
façon, f., *way, manner.*
facteur, m., *postman.*
faculté, f., *faculty.*
faible, adj., *feeble, weak.*
faiblir, v. n., *weaken.*
faim, f., *hunger.*
faire, v. a., *do, make;* faire la cuisine, *cook;* faire = *be* (of the weather). Cf. § 145.
falloir, v. n. im., *to be necessary.*
famille, f., *family.*
fardeau, m., *burden.*
fatigant, adj., *fatiguing.*
fatigué, adj., *tired.*
faubourg, m., *suburb.*
faut (il) (see falloir, in list of irreg. verbs).
fauteuil, m., *armchair.*
faux, adj. (f., fausse), *false.*
favori, adj., *favorite.*
fécond, adj., *fecund, fruitful.*
fécondité, f., *fecundity.*
femme, f., *woman, wife.*
fermer, v. a., *close, shut.*
fer, m., *iron.*
fermeté, f., *firmness.*
féroce, adj., *ferocious.*
fête, f., *fête, feast.*
feu, m., *fire.*
feu, adj., *late, deceased.*
feuille, f., *leaf.*
février, m., *February.*
fi, interj., *fie.*
fier, adj., *proud.*
fil, m., *thread;* toile de fil, *linen.*
fille, f., *daughter, girl;* jeune fille, *girl.*
fils, m., *son.*
fin, f., *end.*
financier, m., *financier.*
finir, v. a., *finish, end.*
fixe, adj., *fix, steady.*
fixer, v. a., *fix, establish, settle.*
fleur, f., *flower.*
flot, m., *wave.*
foi, f., *faith.*
foin, m., *hay.*
fois, f., *time;* une fois, *once.*
force, f., *strength;* à force de, *by much, by repeated, from continually.*
forêt, f., *forest.*
forger, v. a., *forge.*
forgeron, m., *blacksmith.*

forme, f., *form.*
fort, adj., *strong.*
fortune, f., *fortune.*
fou, adj., *crazy, lunatic* (f., **folle**).
foule, f., *crowd,*
fourchette, f., *fork.*
foyer, m., *hearth, home.*
frais, adj., *fresh, cool* (f., **fraîche**).
fraise, f., *strawberry.*
français, adj., *French.*
frein, m., *bit, check.*
frêle, adj., *frail.*
fréquemment, adv., *frequently.*
fréquent, adj., *frequent.*
frère, m., *brother;* **beau-frère**, *brother-in-law.*
froid, m., *cold;* adj., *cold.*
fromage, m., *cheese.*
front, m., *forehead, brow.*
fruit, m., *fruit.*
fuir, v. n. a., *flee, shun.*
fumer, v. a., *smoke.*
fumoir, m., *smoking-room.*
fureur, f., *fury.*
fusiller, v. a., *shoot* (with a gun).

G.

gagner, v. a., *gain, earn, win.*
galerie, f., *gallery.*
gant, m., *glove.*
garçon, m., *boy, waiter.*
gare, f., *station.*
gâter, v. a., *spoil.*
gauche, adj., *left.*
gaulois, adj., *Gaul.*
gaz, m., *gas.*
geler, v. n. a., *freeze.*
général, m., *general.*
généralement, adv., *generally.*
généreux, adj., *generous.*
génie, m., *genius.*
genou, m., *knee.*
genre, m., *gender, kind.*
gens, m. f. pl., *people;* **jeunes gens**, *young people, youth.*
geste, m., *gesture.*
gigot, m., *leg of mutton, hind leg.*
gilet, m., *vest, waistcoat.*
glace, f., *ice.*
gloire, f., *glory;* **se faire gloire**, *boast.*
golfe, m., *gulf.*
gouffe, m., *abyss.*
gouvernail, m., *rudder.*
gouverner, v. a., *govern.*
grâce, f., *grace.*
grand, adj., *great, large, tall.*
grandement, adv., *grandly, greatly.*
grandeur, f., *grandeur, greatness.*
grand-mère, f., *grandmother.*
grand-père, m., *grandfather.*
graver, v. a., *engrave.*
grec, adj., *Greek.*
grêle, f., *hail, hail-storm.*
grêle, adj., *slim, frail.*
grenier, m., *attic, granary.*
gril, m., *gridiron.*
grimper, v. n., *climb.*
gris, adj., *gray.*
grognon, adj., *grumbling;* m. n., *grumbler.*
gronder, v. a., *scold.*
gros, adj., *big.*
guère, adv., *hardly* (with **ne . . .**).
guerre, f., *war.*
guerrier, m., *warrior.*
guérir, v. a., *cure.*
guide, m., *guide;* f., *rein.*

H.

habile, adj., *clever, capable.*
habileté, f., *ability, skill.*
habiller, v. a., *dress;* **s'habiller**, *dress* (one's self).
habit, m., *dress, coat.*
habituel, adj., *habitual.*
habituer, v. a., *habituate;* **s'habituer**, *become accustomed.*
hardi, adj., *bold, brave.*
hardiment, adv., *boldly, bravely.*
harmonieux, adj., *harmonious.*
hasard, m., *hazard;* **par hasard**, *by chance.*
haut, adj., *high;* **parler haut**, *speak loud.*
hé, interj., *hey.*
hélice, f., *helix, screw* (of steamer).
héroïne, f., *heroine.*
héroïsme, m., *heroism.*
héron, m., *heron.*
héros, m., *hero.*

heure, f., *hour;* de bonne heure, *early.*
heureusement, adv., *happily.*
heureux, adj., *happy* (cf. § 210).
hibou, m., *owl.*
hier, adv., *yesterday.*
hirondelle, f., *swallow.*
histoire, f., *history.*
historique, adj., *historical.*
hiver, m., *winter.*
ho, interj., *hi, ho.*
holà, interj., *hallo.*
hollandais, adj., *Dutch.*
homme, m., *man.*
honneur, m., *honor.*
honorer, v. a., *honor.*
honte, f., *shame.*
honteux, adj., *ashamed.*
hôpital, m., *hospital.*
horde, f., *horde.*
hôte, m., *host, guest.*
hôtel, m., *hotel.*
huile, f., *oil.*
huit, nu., *eight.*
huitième, nu., *eighth.*
hypocrite, adj., *hypocritical;* n. m., *hypocrite.*

I.

ici, adv., *here.*
idéal, adj., and n. m., *ideal.*
idée, f., *idea.*
idiot, adj. and n., *idiot.*
ignoble, adj., *ignoble.*
ignorant, adj., *ignorant.*
il, pron., *he.*
illustre, adj., *illustrious.*
ils, pl. of *il.*
image, f., *image.*
imagination, f., *imagination.*
imitation, f., *imitation.*
imiter, v. a., *imitate.*
impie, adj., *impious.*
important, adj., *important.*
importer, v. n., *be important.*
impossible, adj., *impossible.*
imprévu, adj., *unforeseen.*
impur, adj., *impure.*
inamovible, adj., *irremovable, permanent.*
inanité, f., *inanity, emptiness.*
incliner, v. a. n., *incline, bend;* incliner, a., *be inclined to.*
incomparable, adj., *incomparable.*
inconnu, adj., *unknown.*
incroyable, adj., *incredible.*
index, m., *index-finger.*
indiquer, v. a., *indicate, show.*
indisposition, f., *indisposition.*
inépuisable, adj., *inexhaustible.*
inférieur, adj., *inferior.*
influence, f., *influence.*
inimitable, adj., *inimitable.*
inquiet, adj., *uneasy.*
insister, v. n., *insist.*
inspecteur, m., *inspector.*
instant, m., *instant.*
instruction, f., *instruction.*
instruire, v. a., *instruct, educate.*
intituler, v. a., *entitle.*
inventer, v. a., *invent.*
inventeur, m., *inventor.*
invention, f., *invention.*
invitation, f., *invitation.*
irréprochable, adj., *irreproachable.*
italien, adj., *Italian.*

J.

jadis, adv., *of old, formerly.*
jaloux, adj., *jealous.*
jamais, adv., *never.*
jambe, f., *leg.*
janvier, m., *January.*
jardin, m., *garden.*
jardinier, m., *gardener.*
jaune, adj., *yellow.*
je, pron., *I.*
jeter, v. a., *throw.*
jeudi, m., *Thursday.*
jeun (à), adv., *fasting, with an empty stomach.*
jeune, adj., *young;* jeunes gens, *young people;* jeune fille, *girl.*
joli, adj., *pretty.*
joliment, adv., *prettily; a great deal.*
jouer, v. a., *play.*
jouet, m., *plaything.*
joug, m., *yoke.*
jouir, v. n., *enjoy.*
joujou, m., *plaything, toy.*
jour, m., *day.*
journal, m., *newspaper, journal.*

juge, m., *judge.*
juger, v. a., *judge.*
juillet, m., *July.*
juin, m., *June.*
jusque, adv., *as far as, until, up to;* jusqu'à ce que, *until that.*
juste, adj., *just.*
justice, f., *justice.*

L.

là, adv., *there;* là-bas, *yonder.*
la, art. f., *the.*
la, pron., *her, it.*
laid, adj., *homely, ugly.*
laisser, v. a., *leave;* laissez-passer, m., *pass.*
lait, m., *milk.*
lampe, f., *lamp.*
langue, f., *tongue, language.*
lasser, v. a., *tire, weary.*
laver, v. a., *wash;* se laver, *wash.*
le, art. m., *the;* pron., *him, it.*
leçon, f., *lesson.*
léger, adj., *light.*
législatif, adj., *legislative.*
légume, m., *vegetable.*
lentement, adv., *slowly.*
lequel, pron. m., *which, what* (cf. §§ 362, 368, etc.).
les, art. pl., *the.*
les, pron. pl., *them.*
lettre, f., *letter.*
lettré, adj., *lettered;* n. m., *man of letters.*
leur, pron. poss., *their.*
leur, pron., *to them.*
lever, v. a., *raise;* se lever, *rise, get up.*
liberté, f., *liberty.*
lierre, m., *ivy.*
lièvre, m., *hare.*
lieu, m., *place;* au lieu de, *instead of.*
ligne, f., *line.*
lion, m., *lion.*
lire, v. a., *read.*
littéraire, adj., *literary.*
livre, m., *book;* f., *pound.*
livrer, v. a., *deliver;* livrer combat, bataille, *give battle.*
logique, f., *logic.*
loi, f., *law.*
loin, adv., *far;* loin que (or, de), *far from.*
long, adj., *long* (f., longue).
longtemps, adv., *long, long time.*
longueur, f., *length.*
lorsque, conj., *when.*
louer, v. a., *praise;* —— *rent.*
lourd, adj., *heavy.*
lu (p. p. of lire).
lui, pron., *to him, to her;* lui-même, *himself.*
lumière, f., *light.*
lundi, m., *Monday.*
lune, f., *moon;* clair de lune, *moonlight.*
lunettes, f. pl., *eyeglasses.*
luxe, m., *luxury.*

M.

ma, pron. poss. f., *my.*
madame, f., *Mrs., madam.*
mademoiselle, f., *Miss, young lady.*
magasin, m., *store.*
magnanime, adj., *magnanimous.*
mai, m., *May.*
main, f., *hand.*
maintenant, adv., *now.*
maire, m., *mayor.*
mairie, f., *town* or *city hall.*
mais, conj., *but.*
maison, f., *house.*
maître, m., *master;* maître-d'hôtel, *hotel keeper, house steward.*
maîtresse, f., *mistress, landlady.*
majeur, adj., *of age.*
mal, n. m., *evil;* adv., *badly;* adj., *bad.*
malade, adj., *sick, ill.*
mâle, m., *male.*
malgré, prep., *in spite of.*
malin, adj., *malign, malicious.*
malle, f., *trunk.*
manche, m., *handle;* f., *sleeve.*
manger, v. a., *eat.*
manière, f., *manner;* de manière que, *so that, in such a way that.*
manufacture, f., *factory.*
maquereau, m., *mackerel.*
marchand, m., *merchant.*
marché, m., *market;* bon marché, *cheap.*
marcher, v. n., *walk; run* (a train).

mardi, m., *Tuesday.*
marin, m , *sailor.*
marronnier, m., *horse-chestnut-tree.*
mars, m., *March.*
martyr, m., *martyr.*
martyre, m., *martyrdom.*
masse, f., *heap, mass.*
materiel (pl. aux), m., *material.*
matière, f., *matter.*
matin, m., *morning.*
mauvais, adj., *bad.*
me, pron., *me, to me.*
méchant, adj., *mean, bad, wicked.*
médecin, m., *physician, doctor.*
médius, m., *middle finger.*
meilleur, adj., *better.*
melon, m., *melon.*
membre, m., *member.*
même, adj., *same;* adv., *even;* à même, *able, in a position to.*
menacer, v. a., *threaten.*
ménager, v. a., *spare.*
mener, v. a., *lead.*
mensonge, m., *lie.*
menteur, m., *liar.*
métier, m., *trade.*
mentir, v. n., *lie.*
mer, f., *sea;* mal de mer, *seasickness.*
mercenaire, adj., *mercenary.*
merci, interj., *thanks, thank you.*
mercredi, m., *Wednesday.*
mère, f., *mother;* belle-mère, *mother-in-law.*
merveilleusement, adv., *wonderfully.*
merveilleux, adj., *wonderful.*
messe, f., *mass.*
messieurs, m. (pl. of monsieur).
métier, m., *trade.*
mètre, m., *meter* (measure).
mettre, v. a., *put, place.*
midi, m., *noon.*
mien, pron., *mine* (cf. § 138 ff.).
mieux, adv., *better* (comp. of bien).
mignon, adj., *nice, gentle.*
mille, nu., *thousand* (mil).
million, nu., *million.*
mineur, adj., *minor.*
ministre, m., *minister.*
minuit, m., *midnight.*
minute, f., *minute.*
misérable, adj., *miserable.*
mobile, adj., *mobile, changeable.*
modeler, v. a., *model.*
modestie, f., *modesty.*
moi, pron., *me;* moi-même, *myself.*
moindre, adj., *lesser, less.*
moine, m., *monk.*
moins, adv., *less, fewer;* le moins, *the least;* à moins que, *unless;* à moins de, *except, in case of, unless.*
mois, m., *month.*
mon, pron., *my* (cf. §§ 44, 136).
monde, m., *world.*
monnaie, f., *money, change;* monnaie-courante, *currency.*
monsieur, m., *Mr., sir, gentleman.*
montagne, f., *mountain.*
monter, v. n. a., *get up on, mount.*
montre, f., *watch.*
montrer, v. a., *show.*
monture, f., *animal* (for riding).
monument, m., *monument.*
moquer (se — de), *mock, make fun of.*
moral, adj., *moral.*
morceau, m., *morsel, piece.*
mordre, v. a., *bite.*
mort, f., *death.*
mort, adj. (and p. p. of mourir), *dead.*
mortel, adj. and n. m., *mortal.*
mot, m., *word.*
mou, adj., *soft.*
mouiller, v. a., *wet;* se mouiller, *get wet.*
mourir, v. n., *die.*
mousse, f., *moss, foam.*
mouvement, m., *movement.*
mouvementé, adj. (and p. p. of mouvementer), *animated.*
muet, adj., *silent.*
mugir, v. n., *roar.*
municipal, adj., *municipal.*
mur, m., *wall.*
mûr, adj., *ripe.*
musée, m., *museum.*
musique, f., *music.*

N.

nager, v. n., *swim.*
naissance, f., *birth.*
naître, v. n., *be born.*
naivement, adv., *naively.*

narration, f., *narration.*
nation, f., *nation.*
naturel, adj., *natural.*
né (p. p. of **naître**), *born.*
néanmoins, adv., *nevertheless.*
nécessaire, adj., *necessary.*
négligence, f., *negligence.*
nègre, m., *negro* (f., **négresse**).
neige, f., *snow.*
ne . . . pas, adv., *not;* **ne . . . plus**, *not any more;* **ne . . . que**, *only, but.*
net, adj., *neat; net.*
nettoyer, v. a., *clean, cleanse.*
neuf, nu., *nine.*
neuf, adj., *new.*
neuvième, nu., *ninth.*
nez, m., *nose.*
ni, conj., *neither;* **ni . . . ni**, *neither . . . nor.*
nid, m., *nest.*
nièce, f., *niece.*
noble, adj., m. n., *noble.*
noir, adj., *black.*
noix, f., *walnut.*
nom, m., *name, noun.*
nombre, m., *number.*
nommer, v. a., *name.*
non, adv., *no.*
nord, m., *north.*
nos (cf. § 136).
nosologie, f., *nosology.*
notre, adj. pron., *our;* **le nôtre**, etc., *ours.*
nous, pron., *we, us, to us;* **nous-mêmes**, *ourselves.*
nouveau, adj., *new;* **de nouveau**, *again.*
nouvelle, f., *news.*
novembre, m., *November.*
noyau, m., *stone* (of fruit).
nu, adj., *naked, bare* (cf. § 334).
nuit, f., *night.*
nul, adj., *not any, no.*
nullement, adv., *in no wise.*
numéro, m., *number.*

O.

obéir, v. n. a., *obey.*
obliger, v. a., *oblige.*
octobre, m., *October.*
odieux, adj., *odious.*
œuf, m., *egg.*
œuvre, f., *work.*
offrir, v. a., *offer.*
oiseau, m., *bird.*
ombrelle, f., *parasol.*
on, pron., *one, they, people,* etc. (cf. §§ 39, 381 ff.).
oncle, m., *uncle.*
onze, nu., *eleven.*
onzième, nu., *eleventh.*
opéra, m., *opera.*
opprobre, m., *opprobrium, disgrace.*
or, m., *gold.*
or, conj., *now, moreover,* etc.
oracle, m., *oracle.*
orage, m., *storm.*
orange, f., *orange.*
ordinal, adj., *ordinal.*
ordonner, v. a., *order.*
oreille, f., *ear.*
orgueil, m., *pride.*
orienter, v. a., *orient, set;* **s'orienter**, *to locate one's self.*
original, adj., *original.*
originalité, f., *originality.*
oser, v. a., *dare.*
ou, conj., *or;* **ou . . . ou**, *either . . . or,*
où, adv., *where, when, in which* (cf. § 371).
oublier, v. a., *forget.*
ouest, m., *west.*
oui, adv., *yes.*
outrager, v. a., *outrage, insult.*
ouvert (p. p. of **ouvrir**, and adj.), *open.*
ouvrage, m., *work, job.*
ouvrir, v. a., *open.*

P.

page, f., *page;* m., *page* (boy).
paille, f., *straw.*
pain, m., *bread.*
paire, f., *pair.*
paix, f., *peace;* **paix**, interj., *quiet.*
palais, m., *palace; palate.*
pâle, adj., *pale.*
paletot, m., *coat.*
pâleur, f., *paleness.*
papier, m., *paper;* **papier de soie**, *tissue paper.*
panier, m., *basket.*

paquebot, m., *packet.*
par, prep., *by, through.*
paraître, v. n., *appear.*
parapluie, m., *umbrella.*
parc, m., *park.*
parce que, conj., *because.*
pardessus, m., *overcoat.*
pardonner, v. a., *pardon, forgive.*
parents, m. pl., *parents, relatives.*
paresseux, adj., *lazy.*
parfait, adj., *perfect.*
parisien, adj., *Parisian.*
parler, v. n., *speak.*
parleur, m., *talker.*
parmi, prep., *among.*
parole, f., *word, speech.*
parricide, m., *parricide.*
part, f., *part, side.*
partager, v. a., *divide, partake of.*
parti, m., *party.*
partial, adj., *partial.*
participe, m., *participle.*
partie, f., *part.*
partiel, f., *partial.*
partir, v. n., *depart, go away.*
parvenir, v. n., *arrive, succeed.*
pas, adv., *not;* pas de, *not any, no;* pas du tout, *not at all.*
passager, m., *passenger.*
passé, m., *past.*
passe-partout, m., *latch-key.*
passer, v. a. n., *pass, hand, surpass; go past.*
passion, f., *passion.*
patience, f., *patience.*
patrie, f., *fatherland, country.*
pause, f., *pause, stop.*
pavé, m., *pavement.*
paver, v. a., *pave.*
payer, v. a., *pay.*
pays, m., *country.*
paysan, m., *peasant.*
peau, f., *skin.*
pêche, f., *peach.*
pécheur, m., *sinner.*
peigner, v. a., *comb;* se peigner, *to comb one's hair.*
peine, f., *pain, effort.*
peintre, m., *painter.*
peler, v. a., *peal.*
pendant, prep., *during;* pendant que, *while.*
pendule, f., *clock;* m., *pendulum.*
pénétrer, v. a. n., *penetrate.*
pensée, f., *thought.*
penser, v. a., *think.*
penseur, m., *thinker.*
percevoir, v. a., *perceive, collect.*
perdre, v. a., *lose.*
père, m., *father.*
perfection, f., *perfection.*
perfide, adj., *perfidious.*
péril, m., *peril, danger.*
période, f., *period.*
persécuteur, m., *persecutor.*
persévérer, v. n., *persevere, persist.*
personne, pron., *nobody;* f., *person.*
perte, f., *loss.*
peser, v. a. n., *weigh.*
petit, adj., *small, short.*
peu, adv., *little, few;* pour peu que, *however little.*
peuple, m., *people.*
peur, f., *fear;* de peur que (or, de), *for fear that, lest.*
peut-être, adv., *perhaps.*
phalange, f., *phalanx, band.*
philosophique, adj., *philosophical.*
philosophie, f., *philosophy.*
physique, f., *physics.*
piano, m., *piano.*
pièce, f., *piece, play;* la pièce, *apiece.*
pied, m., *foot.*
pierre, f., *stone.*
pire, adj., *worse* (comp. of mauvais).
pis, adv., *worse* (comp. of mal).
pistolet, m., *pistol.*
pitié, f., *pity.*
place, f., *place, square.*
plafond, m., *ceiling.*
plaine, f., *plain.*
plaire, v. n., *please;* se plaire à, *take pleasure in.*
plaisir, m., *pleasure.*
plancher, m., *floor.*
plein, adj., *full.*
pleurer, v. n., *cry, weep.*
pleuvoir, v. n., *rain.*
ployer, v. a. n., *irr. bend.*
pluie, f., *rain.*
plume, f., *pen.*
plupart, (la) f., *greater part.*
plus, adv., *more.*

plusieurs, adj., *several.*
poêle, m., *stove;* f., *frying-pan.*
poème, m., *poem.*
poésie, f., *poetry, poem.*
poète, m., *poet.*
poids, m., *weight.*
poing, m., *fist.*
point, adv. (see pas).
point, m., *point.*
poisson, m., *fish.*
poli, adj., *polite.*
politique, adj., *political.*
pomme, f., *apple.*
pommier, m., *apple-tree.*
pont, m., *bridge, deck.*
port, m., *port.*
portail, m., *gate.*
porte, f., *door.*
porter, v. a., *carry, wear;* porter un coup, *strike a blow.*
posséder, v. a., *possess.*
possible, adj., *possible.*
poste, f., *post-office;* m., *position, employment.*
postérité, f., *posterity.*
pou, m., *louse.*
pouce, m., *thumb.*
poulain, m., *colt.*
pour, prep., *for, to, in order to;* pour que, *in order that.*
pourquoi, conj., *why;* c'est pourquoi, *therefore.*
pourvoir, v. a. n., *provide.*
pourvu que, conj., *provided that.*
pousser, v. a., *push;* pousser un cri, *utter a cry.*
poussière, f., *dust.*
pouvoir, v. a. n., *be able, can.*
pouvoir, m., *power.*
prairie, f., *meadow, prairie.*
précis, adj., *precise* (cf. § 164).
prédécesseur, m., *predecessor.*
préférer, v. a., *prefer.*
préfet, m., *prefect, official at the head of a department.*
préfecture, f., *prefecture, mansion of the prefect.*
premier, adj., *first.*
premièrement, adv., *firstly.*
prendre, v. a., *take.*
préoccupation, f., *preoccupation.*
préparer, v. a., *prepare;* se préparer, *get ready.*
près, prep., *near;* près de, *about to, near.*
présent, adj., *present.*
présent, m., *present.*
président, m., *president.*
prêt, adj., *ready.*
prétendre, v. a. n., *pretend, have pretensions to.*
preuve, f., *proof.*
prier, v. a., *pray, beg.*
prière, f., *prayer; please.*
principal, adj., *principal.*
printemps, m., *spring.*
prix, m., *price, prize, reward.*
probablement, adv., *probably.*
prochain, adj., *next.*
prochain, m., *neighbor, fellow-man.*
proclamer, v. a., *proclaim.*
prodigieux, adj., *prodigious.*
produire, v. a., *produce.*
professeur, m., *professor.*
profiler, v. a., *show in profile.*
progrès, m., *progress.*
projet, m., *project.*
promener, v. a., *lead about;* se promener, *take a walk.*
promesse, f., *promise.*
promptitude, f., *promptitude.*
prononcer, v. a., *pronounce.*
prose, f., *prose.*
proverbe, m., *proverb.*
prune, f., *plum.*
pu (p. p. of pouvoir).
public (f., publique), *public.*
puis, adv., *then.*
puissance, f., *power.*
punir, v. a., *punish.*
pupitre, m., *desk.*
pur, adj., *pure.*
pureté, f., *purity.*

Q.

quand, adv. conj., *when, even if;* quand même, *even if.*
quantité, f., *quantity.*
quarante, nu., *forty.*
quart, m., *quarter, fourth part.*
quatorze, nu., *fourteen.*
quatre, nu., *four.*

quatrième, nu., *fourth.*
quatre-vingts, nu., *eighty.*
quatre-vingt-dix, nu., *ninety.*
que, pron., *whom, which, that.*
que, conj., *as, than.*
quel (f., quelle), *which, what;* quel que, *whatever, whoever;* quelque, *whatever, some, whatever;* quelque . . . que, *howcver . . .* quelque chose, *something;* quelqu'un, *somebody, some one;* quelques-uns, *some (ones).*
quelquefois, adv., *sometimes.*
qui, pron., *who, which, whoever* (cf. § 362 ff.).
quiconque, pron., *whoever, whosoever.*
quinze, nu., *fifteen.*
quoi, pron., *what;* quoi que, *whatever;* quoi que ce soit, *whatever it may be.*
quoique, conj., *although.*

R.

rabais, m., *reduced rate.*
raccommoder, v. a., *mend.*
racheter, v. a., *redeem.*
rage, f., *rage.*
raison, f., *reason;* avoir raison, *to be right.*
ramener, v. a., *lead* or *bring back.*
rang, m., *rank.*
rapide, adj., *rapid;* n. m., *flyer* (train).
rapport, m., *account, report;* par rapport à, *compared to;* sous le rapport de, *according to.*
rare, adj., *rare.*
ras, adj., *shorn.*
ravin, m., *ravine.*
recevoir, v. a., *receive.*
réciter, v. a., *recite.*
recteur, m., *rector* (of an academy).
régal, m., *regal.*
regard, m., *look.*
regarder, v. a., *look at.*
régler, v. a., *settle.*
règne, m., *reign.*
regret, m., *regret;* à regret, *with regret,*
regretter, v. a., *regret.*
réjouir, v. a., *rejoice;* se réjouir, *rejoice.*
religion, f., *religion.*
remarquable, adj., *remarkable.*
remarquer, v. a., *notice, remark.*
remercier, v. a., *thank.*
remercîment, m., *thanks.*
remettre, v. a., *give, hand;* also, *postpone.*
remonter, v. a., *wind.*
remplacer, v. a., *replace.*
renaître, v. n., *be born again.*
rencontrer, v. a., *meet, encounter.*
rendre, v. a., *return, give back; make* (happy, glad, etc.); se rendre à une invitation, *accept an invitation.*
répandre, v. a., *spread.*
répartir, v. a., *divide, distribute.*
repartir, v. n., *go away again.*
repas, m., *meal, repast.*
repentir (se), *repent.*
répéter, v. a., *repeat.*
replet, adj., *replete, stout.*
répondre, v. a. n., *reply, answer.*
reponse, f., *answer, reply.*
reposer, v. n., *rest;* se reposer, *rest.*
reprendre, v. a., *take up again.*
représenter, v. a. n., *represent.*
république, f., *republic.*
résident, m., *resident.*
respect, m., *respect;* présenter les respects, *present* (give) *the regards.*
respectueusement, adv., *respectfully.*
respectueux, adj., *respectful.*
responsable, adj., *responsible.*
ressembler, v. n., *resemble.*
ressort, m., *spring, control.*
rester, v. n., *remain.*
résumer, v. a., *make an abstract; personify.*
retenir, v. a., *hold back.*
retraite, f., *retreat.*
retrouver, v. a., *find, recover.*
réunion, f., *reunion.*
réussir, v. a. n., *succeed.*
réveiller, v. a., *wake up;* se réveiller, *awake.*
revenir, v. n., *return, come back, belong.*
rêver, v. n., *dream.*
revêtir, v. a., *clothe;* se revêtir, *to clothe one's self.*
révolution, f., *revolution.*
révolver, m., *revolver, pistol.*

revue, f., *review, magazine.*
riche, adj., *rich.*
richesse, f., *riches.*
ridicule, adj., *ridicule.*
rien, pron. (with ne), *nothing.*
rire, v. n., *laugh.*
rival, m., *rival.*
rivière, f., *river.*
robe, f., *dress, robe.*
rognon, m., *kidney.*
roi, m., *king.*
rôle, m., *part.*
roman, m., *novel.*
romancier, m., *novelist.*
romantisme, m., *romanticism.*
rompre, v. a., *break.*
rond, adj., *round.*
ronger, v. a., *gnaw.*
rose, f., *rose.*
rossignol, m., *nightingale.*
rôtir, v. a., *roast.*
roue, f., *wheel.*
rouge, adj., *red;* rougir, *blush, become red;* roux, adj., *sandy-red.*
rouler, v. n. a., *roll.*
roulette, f., *roller.*
ruban, m., *ribbon.*
rue, f., *street.*
russe, adj., *Russian.*

S.

sa, poss. adj., *his, her.*
sacré, adj., *sacred.*
sage, adj., *wise, well behaved.*
saint, adj., *saint, holy.*
saison, f., *season.*
salle, f., *hall, room;* salle à manger, *dining-room;* salle d'attente, *waiting-room;* salle de bains, *bath-room.*
salon, m., *drawing-room.*
salutation, f., *salutation, greeting.*
samedi, m., *Saturday.*
sang, m., *blood.*
sanglant, adj., *bloody.*
sanguinaire, adj., *sanguinary, bloodthirsty.*
sans, prep., *without.*
santé, f., *health.*
sauce, f., *stew, broth.*
saumon, m., *salmon.*
savamment, adv., *scientifically.*
savant, adj., *learned;* n. m., *scientist.*
savoir, v. a., *know;* c'est à savoir, *this remains to be known* (cf. § 387).
savon, m., *soap.*
se, pron., *himself, herself, one's self, itself.*
sécher, v. a., *dry;* se sécher, *get dry.*
seconde, f., *second.*
secondement, adv., *secondly.*
secourable, adj., *helpful.*
secret, adj. (or n. m.), *secret.*
sein, m., *breast, bosom.*
seize, nu., *sixteen.*
semaine, f., *week.*
sembler, v. n., *seem.*
semence, f., *seed.*
semer, v. a., *sow.*
semeur, m., *sower.*
sénat, m., *senate.*
sensibilité, f., *sensitiveness, sensibility.*
sensible, adj., *sensitive.*
sentiment, m., *sentiment.*
séparer, v. a., *separate.*
sept, nu., *seven.*
septembre, m., *September.*
septième, nu., *seventh.*
sérieux, adj., *serious.*
serrer, v. a., *hold tight, squeeze.*
service, m., *service.*
servir, v. a., *serve, wait on;* se servir, *to help one's self.*
seul, adj., *alone.*
seulement, adv., *only.*
sévère, adj., *severe.*
si, conj., *if, whether;* si, adv., *so.*
siècle, m., *century.*
siège, m., *seat, siege.*
sien, poss. pron., *his, hers.*
siffler, v. a. n., *whistle.*
sillon, m., *furrow.*
simple, adj., *simple.*
simplement, adv., *simply.*
simplicité, f., *simplicity.*
sincère, adj., *sincere.*
situation, f., *situation.*
six, nu., *six.*
sixième, nu., *sixth.*
société, f., *society.*
sœur, f., *sister;* belle-sœur, *sister-in-law.*

soi, pron., *one's self;* soi-même, *one's self.*
soie, f., *silk.*
soif, f., *thirst.*
soin, m., *care.*
soir, m., *evening.*
soit (subj. of être), *be it;* adv., soit . . . soit, *either . . . or, whether . . . or.*
soixante, nu., *sixty.*
soixante-dix, nu., *seventy.*
soldat, m., *soldier.*
soleil, m., *sun.*
solidité, f., *solidity, resistance.*
somme, m., *sleep, nap;* f., *sum.*
sommeil, m., *sleep.*
son, poss. adj., *his, her.*
sorte, f., *kind;* de sorte que, *so that.*
sortir, v. n., *go out.*
sot, adj., *fool, foolish.*
souffrir, v. n. a., *suffer.*
soupe, f., *soup.*
souper, v. n., *take supper.*
souple, adj., *supple, flexible.*
souplesse, f., *suppleness.*
sourire, m., *smile.*
sous, prep., *under.*
soutenir, v. a., *sustain, uphold.*
souvenir, m., *remembrance, souvenir.*
souvenir (se), *to remember.*
souvent, adv., *often.*
spontanéité, f., *spontaneity.*
style, m., *style.*
subdiviser, v. a., *subdivide.*
sublime, adj., *sublime.*
succéder, v. n., *succeed.*
succès, m., *success.*
succomber, v. n., *succumb.*
sud, m., *south.*
suédois, adj., *Swedish, Swede.*
suffrage, m., *suffrage.*
suisse, adj., *Swiss.*
suite, f., *continuation;* à la suite de, *after.*
suivant, adj., *next, following.*
suivre, v. a., *follow.*
supérieur, adj., *superior, upper.*
supériorité, f., *superiority.*
superlatif, m., *superlative.*
supporter, v. a., *support, stand.*
supposer, v. a., *suppose;* supposé que, *suppose that.*
sur, prep., *on, upon.*
surpris, adj., *surprised.*
surprise, f., *surprise.*
survenir, v. n., *happen.*
survivre, v. n., *survive.*
syllabe, f., *syllable.*

T.

table, f., *table.*
tableau, m., *picture, blackboard.*
tailler, v. a., *cut, carve, grave.*
tailleur, m., *tailor.*
taire (se), *keep silent.*
talent, m., *talent.*
tant, adv., *so much, so many.*
tante, f., *aunt.*
tantôt, adv., *presently, soon;* tantôt . . . tantôt, *now . . . now.*
tard, adv., *late;* en retard, *late.*
tasse, f., *cup.*
te, pron., *thee, to thee.*
tel, adj., *such, such a one.*
tellement, adv., *so, so much.*
témoigner, v. n. a., *testify; convey (sympathy,* etc.).
témoin, m., *witness.*
tempête, f., *tempest.*
temps, m., *time, weather.*
tenir, v. a., *hold.*
tentation, f., *temptation.*
terme, m., *term.*
terrasser, v. a., *knock down, throw on the ground.*
terre, f., *earth, land.*
terreur, f., *terror.*
territoire, m., *territory.*
tête, f., *head.*
thé, m., *tea.*
théâtre, m., *theater.*
théologie, f., *theology.*
théologien, m., *theologian.*
théologique, adj., *theological.*
tien, poss. pron., *thine, yours.*
tiens (imper. of tenir), *well, well now.*
tiers, m., *third.*
tigre, m., *tiger.*
timbre, m., *stamp, postage-stamp.*
tire-bottes, m., *boot-jack* (cf. § 321).
tirer, v. a., *draw.*
titre, m., *title.*
toge, f., *toga.*

toi, pron., *thee, you;* toi-même, *thyself, yourself.*
toile, f., *cloth, linen.*
toit, m., *roof.*
tombeau, m., *tomb.*
tomber, v. n., *fall.*
tort, m., *wrong;* avoir tort, *be wrong.*
tôt, adv., *soon.*
toucher, v. a., *touch.*
toujours, adv., *always.*
tour, m., *turn, tour;* f., *tower.*
tourelle, f., *little tower* or *cupola, turret.*
tout, adj. (pl. tous, toutes), *all* (cf. § 350) *every;* adv., *entirely, altogether, quite;* n. m., *everything, all things.*
trace, f., *trail, trace.*
traduction, f., *translation.*
tragédie, f., *tragedy.*
trahir, v. a. n., *betray.*
train, m., *train;* être en train de, *to be in the act of* (cf. § 392).
traître, m., *traitor.*
tranquille, adj., *quiet.*
transformer, v. a., *transform.*
transatlantique, adj., *transatlantic.*
transition, f., *transition.*
transport, m., *transport, transportation.*
travail, m., *work.*
travailler, v. n., *work.*
traversée, f., *voyage, crossing.*
traverser, v. a., *cross.*
treize, nu., *thirteen.*
trembler, v. n., *tremble, fear.*
trente, nu., *thirty.*
très, adv., *very.*
triompher, v. n., *triumph.*
triste, adj., *sad, pitiful.*
trois, nu., *three.*
troisième, nu., *third.*
tromper, v. a., *deceive;* se tromper, *be mistaken.*
trône, m., *throne.*
trop, adv., *too, too many.*
trottoir, m., *sidewalk.*
trouver, v. a., *find;* se trouver, *find one's self, happen to be.*
truite, f., *trout.*
tu, pron., *thou, you.*
tuer, v. a., *kill.*
tyran, m., *tyrant.*
tyrannie, f., *tyranny.*

U.

un, art. and adj., *a, an, one;* l'un l'autre, *one another.*
unitaire, adj., *unitarian.*
universel, adj., *universal.*

V.

vache, f., *cow.*
vaincre, v. a. n., *conquer, vanquish, overcome.*
vallée, f., *valley.*
vanter, v. a., *praise;* se vanter, *boast, pride one's self.*
vapeur, f., *steam, vapor.*
veau, m., *calf.*
veiller, v. a. n., *watch, wake.*
vendre, v. a., *sell.*
vendredi, m., *Friday.*
vénérer, v. a., *venerate.*
venger, v. a., *avenge.*
vengeur, m. and adj., *avenger, avenging.*
venir, v. n., *come;* venir à bout de, *conquer;* venir de, (cf. § 386 f.).
vent, m., *wind.*
verbe, m., *verb.*
verdure, f., *verdure, green.*
vérité, f., *truth.*
verre, m., *glass.*
vers, m., *verse, line.*
vers, prep., *toward.*
vert, adj., *green.*
vertu, f., *virtue.*
vêtement, m., *garment, clothes.*
vêtir, v. a., *dress, clothe.*
viande, f., *meat.*
vicomte, m., *viscount.*
vicomtesse, f., *viscountess.*
victime, f., *victim.*
victoire, f., *victory.*
vie, f., *life.*
vieillard, m., *old man.*
vieillesse, f., *old age.*
vieux, adj., *old.*
vif, adj., *quick.*
vil, adj., *vile.*
villa, f., *villa.*
village, m., *village.*

ville, f., *city;* **en ville**, *in the city.*
vin, m., *wine.*
vingt, nu., *twenty.*
visage, m., *face, visage.*
vis-à-vis, adv. and prep., *opposite, in front of.*
visite, f., *visit, visitor.*
vite, adv. and adj., *quick, quickly, fast.*
vivant, adj., *living, alive.*
vivement, adv., *lively, quickly, greatly, much.*
voici, prep., *here is.*
voilà, prep., *there is.*
voile, f., *sail;* m., *veil.*
voir, v. a., *see.*
voisin, m., *neighbor.*
voiture, f., *carriage.*
voix, f., *voice.*
volaille, f., *poultry.*
voler, v. a. n., *steal, fly.*
voleur, m., *thief.*
votre, poss. adj., *your;* **le vôtre**, etc., *yours.*
vouer, v. a., *devote.*
vouloir, v. a., *will, wish, want;* **en vouloir à**, *be angry with.*
vous, pron., *you, ye, to you;* **vous-mêmes** (**même**), *yourselves* (*yourself*).
voyage, m., *journey,*
voyager, v. n., *travel.*
voyageur, m., *traveler, passenger.*
vraiment, adv., *truly, really.*
vue, f., *view, sight.*

W.

wagon, m., *car* (of a train).

Y.

y, adv., *there, here;* pron., *to him, her, to it, it, that, this,* etc.

II.

ENGLISH–FRENCH.

A.

a, an, *un.*
able, *capable;* to be able, *pouvoir.*
about, *environ, quelque;* about it, *en;* about to, *près de.*
above, *dessus, au dessus de.*
absolutely, *absolument.*
absolved, *absous.*
abstract (make an), *résumer.*
abyss, *gouffre, abîme* (m.).
accept, *accepter, agréer; se rendre à (une invitation).*
accomplice, *complice* (m.).
according to, *selon, sous le rapport.*
accuser, *accusateur* (m.).
accustom, *habituer;* become accustomed, *s'habituer.*
acquire, *acquérir.*
act, *agir.*
acute, *aigu.*
admit, *admettre.*
after, *après, après que; à la suite.*
afterward, *après, ensuite.*
again, *de nouveau, encore;* (also translated by prefix re).
against, *contre.*
age, *âge* (m.); of age, *majeur;* old age, *vieillesse* (f.).
agreeably, *agréablement.*
alive, *vivant, en vie.*
all, *tout, tous, toutes.*
alone, *seul.*
already, *déjà.*
also, *aussi.*
although, *quoique, bien que.*
altogether, *tout à fait, tout . . . que.*
always, *toujours.*
ambiguous, *ambigu.*
amiable, *aimable.*
among, *parmi, entre.*
ancient, *ancien, antique.*
and, *et.*
anger, *colère* (f.).
angry, *fâche;* be angry with, *en vouloir à.*
animal, *animal* (m.); animal (for riding), *monture* (f.).
animated, *mouvemente, animé.*
annexation, *annexion* (f.).
answer, *répondre.*
answer, *réponse* (f.).
appear, *paraître.*
applause, *applaudissement* (m.).
apple, *pomme* (f.).
apple-tree, *pommier* (m.).
apply, *appliquer, s'appliquer.*
approach, *approcher, s'approcher.*
April, *avril* (m.).
arm, *bras* (m.); arm-chair, *fauteuil* (m.).
arm, *arme* (f.); take up arms, *s'armer.*
around, *autour de.*
as, *aussi, comme, que;* as many, *autant;* as well as, *comme;* as soon as, *aussitôt que.*
ashamed, *honteux.*
ask, *demander.*
astonish, *surprendre, étonner.*
at, *à, en, dans;* not at all, *pas du tout;* at the house (store, home) of, *chez.*
attend, *assister.*
attic, *grenier* (m.).
attract, *attirer.*
August, *août* (m.).
aunt, *tante* (f.).
author, *auteur* (m.).
autumn, *automne* (m.).
advice, *conseil, avis* (m.).

avenge, *venger.*
avoid, *éviter.*
awake, *s'éveiller, se réveiller.*

B.

back, *dos* (m.).
back, *en arrière;* bring back, *rapporter, ramener.*
bad, *mauvais; mal.*
badly, *mal.*
ball, *bal* (m.); *balle* (f.).
bandage, *bandeau* (m.).
bar, *barreau* (m.).
bare, *nu.*
battalion, *bataillon* (m.).
battle, *bataille* (f.).
be, *être;* it is warm (weather), *il fait chaud;* it is good weather, *il fait beau temps,* etc.
beautiful, *beau.*
beauty, *beauté* (f.).
because, *parce que.*
become, *devenir;* become accustomed, *s'habituer;* become old, *vieillir,* etc.
before, *devant, avant.*
beg, *prier.*
begin, *commencer.*
behind, *derrière.*
behoove, *convenir.*
believe, *croire.*
bell, *cloche* (f.).
belong, *appartenir.*
bench, *banc* (m.).
bend, *ployer, plier;* to be bent upon, *s'entêter à.*
best, *le meilleur;* best (regards), (salutations), *empressé, -ées.*
betray, *trahir.*
better, *meilleur, mieux.*
between, *entre.*
bill, *compte* (m.).
bird, *oiseau* (m.).
birthday, *anniversaire* (m.).
bit, *frein* (m.).
bite (to) *mordre.*
black, *noir;* blacksmith, *forgeron* (m.).
bless, *bénir.*
block up, *encombrer.*
blood, *sang* (m.).
blow, *coup* (m.).
blue, *bleu.*
blush, *rougir.*
board (on), *à bord.*
boast, *se vanter, se faire gloire.*
boat, *bateau* (m.); steamboat, *bateau à vapeur* (m.).
book, *livre* (m.).
bore, *ennuyer;* to be bored, *s'ennuyer.*
born (to be), *naître.*
both . . . and, *et . . . et.*
bow, *arc* (m.); elbow, *coude* (m.).
box, *boite* (f.).
boy, *garçon* (m.).
bread, *pain* (m.).
break, *casser, rompre.*
breakfast, *déjeuner* (m.); to breakfast, *déjeuner.*
bridge, *pont* (m.).
bring, *porter, apporter;* bring near, *approcher;* bring back, *ramener, rapporter;* bring forth or forward, *avancer.*
brood, *couvée* (f.).
brother, *frère* (m.); brother-in-law, *beau-frère.*
brow, *front* (m.).
brush, *brosser, se brosser.*
bud, *éclore.*
build, *bâtir.*
burden, *fardeau, faix* (m.).
burn, *brûler.*
burst, *éclater;* burst out laughing, *éclater de rire.*
but, *mais, ne . . . que; enfin.*
butcher, *boucher* (m.).
butter, *beurre* (m.).
buy, *acheter.*
by, *par, en,* etc.

C.

calf, *veau* (m.).
call, *appeler.*
can, *pouvoir.*
canary bird, *canari* (m.).
cap, *casquette* (f.).
captain, *capitaine* (m.).
car, *wagon* (m.).
care, *soin* (m.); care of, *aux soins de* (with address of letter).
career, *carrière* (f.).

carriage, *voiture* (f.).
carry, *porter*.
castle, *château* (m.); castles in the air, *châteaux en Espagne*.
cat, *chat* (m.).
cattle, *bétail* (m.); plur., *bestiaux*.
ceiling, *plafond* (m.).
cellar, *cave* (f.).
century, *siècle* (m.).
certainly, *certainement*.
chair, *chaise* (f.).
chalk, *craie* (f.).
changeable, *changeant, mobile*.
character, *caractère* (m.).
cheap, *bon marché*.
check, *chèque; frein* (m.).
cheers, *applaudissements* (m. pl.).
cheese, *fromage* (m.).
cherished, *chéri*.
child, *enfant* (m. f.).
church, *église* (f.).
circumstance, *circonstance* (f.).
citizen, *citoyen* (m.).
city, *ville* (f.); city, in the city, *en ville*.
clean, *propre;* to clean, *nettoyer*.
cleanse, *nettoyer*.
clearness, *clarté* (f.).
climb, *grimper*.
clock, *pendule* (f.).
cloth, *drap* (m.); *toile* (f.).
clothe, *vêtir, se revêtir de*.
clothes, *vêtements* (m. pl.).
coachman, *cocher* (m.).
coal, *charbon* (m.).
coat, *paletot* (m.).
coffee, *café* (m.).
cold, *froid* (m.); adj., *froid;* it is cold, *il fait froid;* I am cold, *j'ai froid*.
collar, *col* (m.).
collect (taxes), *percevoir*.
color, *couleur* (f.).
comb, *peigne* (m.); to comb, *peigner;* comb one's hair, *se peigner*.
come, *venir;* come back, *revenir*.
companion, *compagnon* (m.); *compagne* (f.).
company, *compagnie* (f.).
compare, *comparer*.
compared to, *par rapport à*.
comrade, *camarade* (m. f.).
congressman, *député* (m.).
conquer, *vaincre, venir à bout, conquérir*.
convincing, *convaincant*.
cook, *cuisinier* (m.); *cuisinière* (f.); to cook, *faire la cuisine;* to cook something, *faire cuire quelque chose*.
cordially, *cordialement*.
correct, *corriger*.
cost, *coûter*.
council, *conseil, conseil municipal* (m.).
count, *compte;* (title), *comte* (m.); to count, *compter*.
country, *pays* (m.); fatherland, *patrie* (f.); opposed to city, *campagne* (f.).
countryman, *compatriote, paysan* (m.).
cover, *couvrir*.
cow, *vache* (f.).
crazy, *fou*.
create, *créer*.
critic, *critique* (m.).
criticism, *critique* (f.).
cross, *croix* (f.); to cross, *traverser*.
crowd, *foule* (f.); to crowd, *encombrer*.
cry, *cri* (m.); to cry, *pleurer*.
cup, *tasse* (f.).
cupola, *clocher* (m.).
cure, *guérir*.
curious, *curieux*.
cut, *couper*.

D.

Dane, *Danish, danois*.
dare, *oser*.
daughter, *fille* (f.).
day, *jour* (m.).
dead, *mort*.
dear, *cher, chéri;* (f.) *chère*.
death, *mort* (f.).
deceive, *tromper, décevoir*.
deck, *pont* (m.).
deliver, *livrer, délivrer*.
demand, *exiger*.
depart, *partir*.
despair, *désespoir* (m.).
destroy, *détruire*.
devote, *dévouer, vouer*.
devout, *dévot*.
die, *mourir*.
difficult, *difficile;* with difficulty, *difficilement*.
discover, *découvrir*.

disgrace, *malheur, opprobre* (m.); *disgrace* (m.).
dismay, *consterner.*
dissolved, *dissous.*
divide, *diviser, répartir.*
dog, *chien* (m.).
donkey, *âne, baudet* (m.).
door, *porte* (f.).
draw, *tirer.*
drawing-room, *salon* (m.).
dream, *rêve* (m.); to dream, *rêver.*
dress, *robe* (f.); to dress, *vêtir, habiller, s'habiller.*
drill, *exercer.*
drink, *boire.*
dry, *sec;* to dry, *sécher;* to get dry, *se sécher.*
duration, *durée* (f.).
during, *pendant.*
dust, *poussière* (f.).
duty, *devoir* (m.).
dwell, *demeurer.*

E.

each, *chaque;* each one, *chacun.*
ear, *oreille* (f.).
early, *de bonne heure;* earlier, *de meilleure heure, plus de bonne heure.*
earn, *gagner.*
earth, *terre* (f.).
ease, *facilité, aise* (f.).
easily, *facilement, aisément.*
East, *est* (m.).
eat, *manger.*
ebony, *ébène* (f.).
edge, *bord* (m.).
effort, *effort* (m.), *peine* (f.).
egg, *œuf* (m.).
eight, *huit;* eighth, *huitième.*
eighteen, *dix-huit.*
eighty, *quatre-vingts;* eighty-one, *quatre-vingt-un.*
either . . . or, *ou . . . ou, soit . . . soit.*
elder, *aîné.*
elect, *élire.*
eleven, *onze;* eleventh, *onzième.*
elsewhere, *ailleurs.*
emotion (of), *ému.*
end, *fin* (f.), *but* (m.).
English, Englishman, *anglais.*
engrave, *graver.*
enjoy, *jouir de;* to enjoy one's self *s'amuser.*
enough, *assez, assez de.*
entire, *entier, tout.*
entitle, *intituler.*
epoch, *époque* (f.).
equal, *égal;* to equal, *égaler.*
equally, *également.*
erase, *effacer.*
establish, *établir.*
even, *même, quand même, quand.*
evening, *soir* (m.); good evening, *bonsoir,*
every, *chaque, tout;* every one, *chacun.*
example, *exemple* (m.).
except, *excepté, à moins de.*
excuse, *excuse* (f.); to excuse, *dispenser, excuser.*
exercise, *exercice* (m.); to exercise, *exercer.*
expensive, *cher, élevé.*
express (to), *exprimer.*
eyeglasses, *lunettes* (f. pl.).

F.

face, *visage* (m.).
faith, *foi* (f.).
fan, *éventail* (m.).
fall, *tomber.*
fall, *chute* (f.).
false, *faux* (f. *fausse*).
family, *famille* (f.).
famous, *célèbre.*
fancy, *caprice* (m.).
father, *père* (m.); fatherland, *patrie* (f.).
far, *loin;* far from, *loin de, loin que.*
favorite, *favori.*
fear, *peur, crainte* (f.); for fear that, lest, *de peur que.*
fear, *craindre, trembler que, avoir peur.*
fearful, *effrayé.*
feast, *fête* (f.).
February, *février* (m.).
few, *peu;* fewer, *moins.*
fifteen, *quinze.*
fifth, *cinquième.*
fifty, *cinquante.*
fight, *combattre, se battre.*
finally, *enfin.*

find, *trouver, retrouver;* to find one's self (= to be), *se trouver;* to find one's position (= to locate one's self), *s'orienter.*
finger, *doigt* (m.).
finish, *finir, achever.*
fire, *feu* (m.); fireplace, *cheminée.*
firmness, *fermeté* (f.).
first, *premier, premièrement, auparavant, d'abord.*
fish, *poisson* (m.).
fist, *poing* (m.).
five, *cinq.*
flag, *drapeau* (m.).
flatterer, *flatteur, complimenteur* (m.).
flee, *fuir.*
fluently, *couramment.*
floor, *plancher* (m.).
flower, *fleur* (f.).
follow, *suivre.*
fool, foolish, *sot.*
foot, *pied* (m.).
for, *pour, car, parce que.*
forbid, *défendre.*
forehead, *front* (m.).
forget, *oublier.*
forgive, *pardonner.*
fork, *fourchette* (f.).
formerly, *autrefois, jadis.*
forty, *quarante.*
four, *quatre.*
fourteen, *quatorze.*
fourth, *quatrième.*
frail, *frêle.*
freeze, *geler.*
French, Frenchman, *français.*
fresh, *frais.*
Friday, *vendredi* (m.).
friend, *ami* (m.), *amie* (f.).
friendship, *amitié* (f.).
frightened, *effrayé* (from *effrayer*).
from, *de, depuis.*
fruitful, *fécond.*
future, *futur* (tense); *avenir.*
fury, *fureur* (f.).

G.

gain, *gagner.*
garden, *jardin* (m.).
gardener, *jardinier* (m.).
gate, *portail* (m.); *porte* (f.).
gather, *amasser, cueillir.*
Gaul, *gaulois.*
gender, *genre* (m.).
generally, *généralement.*
generous, *généreux.*
gentleman, *monsieur* (m.); (pl., *messieurs*).
German, *allemand.*
gesture, *geste* (m.).
get, *obtenir;* get away, *s'en aller;* get ready to, *se disposer à, se préparer à;* get up, *se lever;* get up on, *monter sur.*
girl, *fille, jeune fille* (f.).
give, *donner.*
glad, *content.*
glass, *verre* (m.).
glory, *gloire* (f.).
glove, *gant* (m.).
go, *aller;* go away, *partir, s'en aller;* go out, *sortir;* go forward or forth, *avancer, s'avancer.*
good, *bon, brave;* good! *bon! bien!* the good and the evil, *le bien et le mal;* the goods (= wealth), *les biens.*
good-bye, *adieu.*
good-day (morning, afternoon), *bonjour.*
govern, *gouverner.*
grandfather, *grand-père, aïeul* (m.).
grandmother, *grand-mère, aïeule* (f.).
gray, *gris.*
great, *grand;* a great deal, *beaucoup de, joliment;* greatly, *grandement, vivement.*
greatness, *grandeur* (f.).
Greek, *grec* (f. *grecque*).
green, *vert.*
greeting, *salutation* (f.).
grove, *bois* (m.).
grumbler, *grognon* (m.).
guest, *hôte* (m.).
gulf, *golfe* (m.).

H.

hair, *cheveu, poil* (of animals).
half, *demi;* a half, *une moitié.*
hall, *corridor* (m.), *salle* (f.); town (or city) hall, *mairie* (f.).
hallo! *holà!*
hand, *main* (f.); to hand, *passer.*

handle, *manche* (m.).
happen, *arriver, survenir.*
happiness, *bonheur* (m.).
happy, *heureux.*
hardly, *difficilement, à peine.*
hare, *lièvre* (m.).
hasten, *hâter, se hâter, accourir.*
hat, *chapeau* (m.).
haughty, *altier, fier.*
have, *avoir* (also, as auxiliary, *être*).
hazard, *hasard* (m.).
head, *tête* (f.).
health, *santé* (f.).
hear, *entendre.*
heart, *cœur* (m.).
heat, *chaleur* (f.).
heaven, *ciel* (m.). Cf. § 320 (*c.*).
heavy, *lourd.*
help, -er, *aide* (m. and f.); help! (interj.), *au secours!*
help, *aider;* to help one's self, *se servir.*
helpful, *secourable, utile.*
her, pers. pron., *la, elle;* to her, *à elle, lui;* herself, *elle-même.*
her, possess. pron., *son, sa, ses;* hers, *le sien,* etc.
here, *ici, y, -ci;* here is, *voici;* from here, *d'ici, en.*
hero, *héros* (m.).
high, *haut, élevé.*
hill, *colline* (f.).
him, *le, lui,* etc.; himself, *lui-même.*
his, *son, sa, ses; le sien,* etc.
history, *histoire* (f.).
hold, *tenir;* hold back, *retenir.*
home, *chez soi* (m.); *demeure* (f.), *foyer* (m.); at the home of, *chez.*
homely, *laid.*
honest, *honnête, brave.*
honor, *honneur* (m.).
hope, *espoir* (m.), *espérance* (f.); to hope, *espérer.*
horse, *cheval* (m.); horse-chestnut-tree, *marronnier* (m.).
hotel, *hôtel* (m.); hotel-keeper, *maître d'hôtel.*
hound, *chien courant* (m.).
hour, *heure* (f.).
house, *maison* (f.); at the house of, *chez.*
how, *comment.*
how much, how many, *combien de.*
however, *quelque . . . que;* however little, *pour peu que.*
hundred, *cent.*
hunger, *faim* (f.).
hungry, *affamé;* to be hungry, *avoir faim.*
hunt, *chasse* (f.).
hush! *chut!*

I.

I, *je, moi.*
if, *si;* even if, *quand même, quand.*
ill, *malade.*
important, *important;* it is important, *il importe.*
improve, *améliorer, s'améliorer.*
in, *en, dans, à.*
incredible, *incroyable.*
indeed, *certes, en vérité, vraiment.*
indoors, *dedans.*
industrious, *diligent.*
inform, *informer, avertir.*
ink, *encre* (f.).
instead of, *au lieu de.*
insult, *insulter, outrager.*
iron, *fer* (m.).
it, *il, elle, le, la,* etc.
its, *son, sa, ses.*
ivy, *lierre* (m.).

J.

January, *janvier* (m.).
jealous, *jaloux.*
job, *ouvrage* (m.).
journey, *voyage* (m.).
judge, *juge* (m.); to judge, *juger.*
July, *juillet* (m.).
June, *juin* (m.).

K.

keep, *garder;* keep from, *empêcher, s'empêcher de.*
key, *clef* (or *clé*) (f.).
kidney, *rognon* (m.).
kill, *tuer.*
kind, *bon, aimable.*
kind, *espèce, sorte* (f.).
king, *roi* (m.).
kitchen, *cuisine* (f.).

knife, *couteau* (m.).
knock, *frapper;* knock down, *terrasser.*
know, *connaître, savoir;* know how, *savoir.*

L.

lady, *dame* (f.); young lady, *demoiselle* (f.).
lament, *déplorer.*
land, *terre* (f.), *pays* (m.); fatherland, *patrie* (f.).
language, *langage* (m.), *langue* (f.).
large, *grand, gros.*
last, *dernier;* at last, *enfin.*
last, *durer.*
latchkey, *passe-partout* (m.).
late, *tard; en retard.*
latter, *dernier.*
laugh, *rire.*
law, *loi* (f.).
lazy, *paresseux.*
lead, *mener, conduire;* lead back, *ramener.*
leaf, *feuille* (f.).
leap year, *année bissextile* (f.).
learn, *apprendre;* learned, *érudit, savant.*
least, *le moins;* at least, *au moins.*
leave, *laisser.*
left, *gauche.*
leg, *jambe* (f.); leg of mutton, *gigot* (m.).
length, *longueur* (f.).
less, -er, *moindre, moins.*
lesson, *leçon* (f.).
letter, *lettre* (f.); letter-box, *boîte aux lettres* (f.); man of letters, *homme de lettres* (m.), *lettré.*
lie, *mensonge* (m.); to lie, *mentir.*
lie down, *se coucher.*
life, *vie* (f.).
light, *lumière* (f.).
light, *léger.*
like, *comme;* alike, *semblable.*
limit, *limite* (f.); to limit, *borner.*
line, *ligne* (f.).
linen, *toile* (f.).
literary, *littéraire.*
little, *petit;* a little, *un peu.*
live, *vivre, demeurer;* alive, *vivant.*
lively, *vif.*
living, *vivant.*
locate (to — one's self), *s'orienter.*
long, *long;* long (= long time), *longtemps.*
look, *regard* (m.); to look at, *regarder.*
lose, *perdre.*
loss, *perte* (f.).
love, *amour* (m.); to love, *aimer.*
lower, *abaisser.*
lunatic, *fou* (m.).
luxury, *luxe* (m.).

M.

magazine, *revue* (f.).
make, *faire, rendre,* etc.
man, *homme* (m.).
manner, *manière, façon* (f.); in the manner of, *à la, en* (cf. § 314).
many, *beaucoup.*
March, *mars* (m.).
market, *marché* (m.).
marvelous, *merveilleux.*
mass, *masse, messe* (f.).
master, *maître* (m.); masterpiece, *chef-d'œuvre* (m.).
matter, *matière* (f.).
May, *mai* (m.).
mayor, *maire* (m.).
me, *me, moi.*
meadow, *prairie* (f.).
meal, *repas* (m.).
meat, *viande* (f.).
meet, *rencontrer, faire la connaissance de.*
mend, *raccommoder.*
merchant, *marchand* (m.).
messenger, *messager, commissionnaire* (m.).
middle, *du milieu.*
midnight, *minuit* (m.).
mien, *air* (m.), *mine* (f.).
milk, *lait* (m.).
mine, *mien, le mien,* etc.
minister, *ministre* (m.).
minor, *mineur.*
Miss, *mademoiselle* (f.).
mistake, *méprise* (f.); to be mistaken, to make a mistake, *se tromper.*
Monday, *lundi* (m.).
money, *argent* (m.), *monnaie* (f.).
monk, *moine* (m.).

month, *mois* (m.).
moon, *lune* (f.).
more, *plus, davantage.*
moreover, *d'ailleurs, or.*
morning, *matin* (m.).
moss, *mousse* (f.).
mother, *mère* (f.); mother-in-law, *belle-mère.*
mountain, *montagne* (f.).
mouth, *bouche* (f.).
movement, *mouvement* (m.).
Mr., *monsieur.*
Mrs., *madame.*
much, *beaucoup; vivement* (with "*remercier,*" in a letter); by much (from continually), *à force de.*
music, *musique* (f.).
my, *mon, ma, mes.*
myself, *moi-même.*

N.

nail, *clou* (m.).
naked, *nu.*
name, *nom* (m.); to name, *nommer.*
nap, *somme, sommeil* (m.).
near, *près, près de;* get near, *s'approcher.*
neat, *net, propre.*
necessary, *nécessaire;* it is necessary, *il faut.*
need, *besoin;* to need, *avoir besoin.*
neighbor, *voisin* (m.), *voisine* (f.).
neither, *ni;* neither . . . nor, *ni . . . ni.*
nest, *nid* (m.).
never, *jamais.*
nevertheless, *néanmoins.*
new, *neuf, nouveau.*
news, *nouvelle* (f.), *nouvelles* (f. pl.).
newspaper, *journal* (m.).
next, *prochain, suivant.*
nice, *gentil, mignon, almable,* etc.
night, *nuit* (f.); good-night, *bonnuit.*
nine, *neuf.*
nineteen, *dix-neuf.*
ninety, *quatre-vingt-dix.*
ninth, *neuvième.*
no, *non pas de, nul;* no more, *ne plus.*
nobody, *personne* (m. pron.).
none, *aucun, nul.*
noon, *midi* (m.).
north, *nord* (m.).
nose, *nez* (m.).
not, *pas, ne . . . pas, ne . . . point;* not any, *pas de, nul;* not any more, *ne . . . plus;* not at all, *pas du tout.*
note, *billet* (m.).
nothing, *rien.*
notice (to), *remarquer.*
noun, *nom* (m.).
novel, *roman* (m.), *nouvelle* (f.).
novelist, *romancier* (m.).
now, *maintenant, or.*
number, *nombre, numéro* (m.).

O.

obey, *obéir à.*
obstruct, *encombrer.*
offer, *offrir.*
office, *bureau* (m.).
often, *souvent.*
oil, *huile* (f.).
old, *vieux;* old age, *vieillesse* (f.); old man, *vieillard* (m.); of old, *jadis, autrefois.*
on, *sur.*
one, *un, une;* one another, *l'un l'autre;* one (pron.), *on;* one's self, *soi-même.*
only, *seulement; ne . . . que.*
open, *ouvrir;* open (adj.), *ouvert.*
opposite, *en face de; vis-à-vis.*
or, *ou.*
order, *ordre* (m.); to order, *ordonner, commander;* in order that, *pour que, afin que.*
other, *autre.*
our, *notre, nos.*
ours, *le (la) nôtre, les nôtres.*
ourselves, *nous-mêmes.*
outdoors, *dehors.*
over, *sur, au dessus de.*
overcoat, *pardessus* (m.).
overcome, *surmonter, vaincre.*
owe, *devoir.*

P.

packet, *paquebot* (m.).
painter, *peintre* (m.).
pair, *paire* (f.).
palace, *palais* (m.).
palate, *palais* (m.).

pass, *laissez-passer* (m.); **to pass,** *passer;* **go past,** *passer* (conj. with *être*).
passenger, *voyageur, passager* (m.).
past, *passé* (m.).
parasol, *ombrelle* (f.).
part, *rôle* (m.), *partie* (f.); **most part,** *plupart* (f.).
partake, *partager.*
party, *parti* (m.).
pavement, *pavé, pavage* (m.).
pay, *payer.*
peace, *paix* (f.).
peach, *pêche* (f.).
peasant, *paysan* (m.).
pencil, *crayon* (m.).
pen, *plume* (f.); **penknife,** *canif* (m.).
people, *peuple* (m.); pron., *on; les gens;* **young people,** *jeunes gens.*
perceive, *percevoir, apercevoir, s'apercevoir de.*
perfect, *parfait.*
perhaps, *peut-être.*
physician, *médecin* (m.).
pick, *cueillir;* **pick up,** *ramasser.*
picture, *tableau* (m.).
piece, *pièce* (f.), *morceau* (m.); **a piece,** *la pièce.*
pig, *cochon, porc* (m.).
place, *place* (f.), *endroit* (m.); **to place,** *mettre.*
play, *jeu* (m.); *pièce* (de théâtre) (f.); **to play,** *jouer;* **plaything,** *jouet* (m.).
please, *plaire;* (if you) **please,** *je vous prie, s'il vous plait;* **please forward,** *prière de faire suivre.*
pleasure, *plaisir* (m.); **take pleasure in,** *se plaire à.*
plum, *prune* (f.).
poem, *poème* (m.); *poésie* (f.).
poet, *poète* (m.).
poetry, *poésie* (f.).
polite, polished, *poli.*
possess, *posséder.*
postman, *facteur* (m.).
post-office, *poste* (f.).
poultry, *volaille* (f.).
power, *pouvoir* (m.), *puissance* (f.).
praise (to), *louer.*
praise, *louange* (f.).
pray, *prier.*
prayer, *prière* (f.).
prefer, *préférer.*
presently, *bientôt, tantôt, à l'instant.*
preserve (to) *conserver.*
pretty, *joli.*
prevent, *empêcher.*
previous, *antérieur;* **previous to,** *avant;* **previously,** *auparavant.*
price, *prix* (m.).
pride, *orgueil* (m.), *fierté* (f.); **to pride one's self,** *se vanter;* **self-pride,** *amour-propre* (m.).
proclaim, *proclamer.*
produce, *produire.*
proof, *preuve* (f.).
proud, *fier.*
prove, *prouver.*
provide, *pourvoir;* **provided that,** *pourvu que.*
punish, *punir.*
pupil, *élève* (m. f.), *écolier* (m.).
push, *pousser.*
put, *mettre;* **put forward,** *avancer, mettre en avant.*

Q.

quarter, *quart* (m.).
quick, *vite, vif;* **quickly,** *vivement, vite.*
quiet, *tranquille;* **quiet!** *paix!*

R.

railroad, *chemin de fer* (m.).
rain, *pluie* (f.); **to rain,** *pleuvoir.*
rainbow, *arc-en-ciel* (m.).
raise, *lever, élever.*
rate, *prix* (m.); **reduced rate,** *rabais.*
read, *lire.*
ready, *prêt.*
really, *réellement, vraiment.*
reason, *raison* (f.).
receive, *recevoir.*
red, *rouge.*
redeem, *racheter.*
reform, *réformer; se corriger.*
refrain (from) *s'empêcher de.*
regards, *amitiés* (f. pl.); *respects* (m. pl.).
regret, *regretter.*
reign, *règne* (m.); **to reign,** *régner.*

rein, *guide* (f.).
rejoice, *réjouir, se réjouir.*
relatives, *parents* (m. pl.).
remain, *rester, demeurer.*
remember, *se rappeler, se souvenir de.*
remembrance, *souvenir* (m.).
repeat, *répéter.*
replace, *remplacer.*
reply, *réponse* (f.); to reply, *répondre.*
representative, *député* (m.).
resemble, *ressembler.*
reside, *résider, demeurer.*
respectful, *respectueux.*
rest, *reposer, se reposer.*
retail, *détail* (m.).
retire (at night), *se coucher.*
retreat, *retraite* (f.).
return, *rendre*; (= come back), *revenir, retourner.*
ribbon, *ruban* (m.).
right, *droit* (m.); to be right, *avoir raison*; right arm, *bras droit.*
ring, *anneau* (m.), *bague* (f.).
ripe, *mûr.*
rise, *se lever.*
river, *rivière* (f.), *fleuve* (m.).
road, *chemin* (m.), *route* (f.).
roar, *mugir, rugir.*
roast, *rôti* (m.); to roast, *rôtir.*
romanticism, *romantisme* (m.).
roof, *toit* (m.).
room, *chambre, salle* (f.); bedroom, *chambre à coucher;* bath-room, *salle de bains;* dining-room, *salle à manger*; waiting-room, *salle d'attente.*
round, *rond.*
rudder, *gouvernail* (m.).
run, *courir, aller, marcher.*
Russian, *russe.*

S.

sad, *triste.*
sail, *voile* (f.); sailing vessel, *bateau à voiles* (m.); sailor, *marin* (m.).
same, *même.*
satisfaction, *satisfaction* (f.), *contentement* (m.).
Saturday, *samedi* (m.).
say, *dire.*
scarcely, *à peine, guère, tout au plus.*
scholar, *écolier* (m.), *élève* (m. f.).
school, *école* (f.).
scold, *gronder.*
sea, *mer* (f.); sea-sickness, *mal de mer* (m.).
season, *saison* (f.).
seat, *siège* (m.).
second, *second, deuxième.*
second (division of time), *seconde* (f.).
see, *voir.*
seem, *sembler.*
self (see myself, etc.); one's self, *soi-même.*
sell, *vendre.*
send, *envoyer*; send back, *renvoyer.*
sensitive, *sensible.*
servant, *domestique* (m. f.), *bonne* (f.).
serve, *servir.*
settle, *régler.*
seven, *sept.*
seventeen, *dix-sept.*
seventh, *septième.*
seventy, *soixante-dix.*
several, *plusieurs.*
sew, *coudre.*
shame, *honte* (f.).
she, *elle.*
shining, *brillant.*
shoe, *soulier* (m.), *bottine* (f.); shoemaker (m.), *cordonnier* (m.).
shoot, *fusiller.*
shorn, *ras.*
short, *court, petit.*
show, *montrer, indiquer.*
sick, *malade.*
side, *côté* (m.); sidewalk, *trottoir* (m.).
sight, *vue* (f.).
silver, *argent* (m.).
since, *depuis, puisque.*
sincere, *sincère, empressé.*
sing, *chanter.*
sir, *monsieur* (m.).
sister, *sœur* (f.); sister-in-law, *belle-sœur.*
sit down, *s'asseoir.*
sixteen, *seize.*
sixty, *soixante.*
skill, *habileté, adresse* (f.).
skin, *peau* (f.).
sky, *ciel* (pl. *cieux*), (m.), (cf. § 320 *c*).
slave, *esclave* (m. f.).
slavery, *esclavage* (m.).

sleep, *sommeil, somme* (m.); to sleep, *dormir.*
sleeve, *manche* (f.).
slim, *grêle, mince.*
slow, *lent;* slowly, *lentement.*
small, *petit.*
smile, *sourire* (m.); to smile, *sourire,*
smoke, *fumée* (f.); to smoke, *fumer;* smoking-room, *fumoir* (m.).
snow, *neige* (f.).
so, *si, ainsi, tellement;* so that, *de manière que, de sorte que;* so much, *tant, tellement;* so many, *tant, tant de.*
soap, *savon* (m.).
soft, *mou;* softly, *doucement.*
soldier, *soldat* (m.).
some, *quelque, quelques, du, de la, des, en,* etc.; some one, *quelqu'un* (m.); sometimes, *quelquefois;* something, *quelque chose* (m.).
son, *fils* (m.); son-in-law, *gendre* (m.).
song, *chanson* (f.), *chant* (m.).
soon, *tôt, bientôt.*
sorry, *fâché.*
south, *sud* (m.).
sow, *semer;* sower, *semeur* (m.).
Spaniard, Spanish, *espagnol.*
spare, *épargner, ménager.*
speak, *parler;* speak loud, *parler haut, parler à haute voix.*
spell, *épeler.*
spend, *dépenser.*
spirit, *esprit* (m.).
spite, *dépit* (m.); in spite of, *malgré.*
spoil, *gâter.*
spoon, *cuiller* (or *cuillère*) (f.).
spread, *répandre.*
spring, *printemps* (m.); (steel) spring, *ressort* (m.).
stage-coach, *diligence* (f.).
stamp, *timbre* (m.).
stand, *se tenir, supporter.*
state, *état* (m.).
station, *station, gare* (f.); station-master, *chef de gare* (m.).
steady, *fixe.*
steal, *voler.*
steam, *vapeur* (f.); steamboat, *bateau à vapeur, steamer* (m.).
stew, *sauce* (f.), *ragoût* (m.).
steward (house), *maître d'hôtel.*
stick, *bâton* (m.).
still (yet), *encore.*
stone, *pierre* (f.); (of a fruit), *noyau* (m.).
stop, *arrêter, s'arrêter.*
store, *magasin* (m.).
storm, *tempête* (f.), *orage* (m.).
story, *histoire* (f.), *conte* (m.).
stove, *poêle* (m.).
straw, *paille* (f.); strawberry, *fraise* (f.).
street, *rue* (f.).
strength, *force* (f.).
strike, *frapper.*
stroke, *coup* (m.).
strong, *fort.*
study, *étude* (f.); to study, *étudier.*
subscription, *abonnement* (m.).
suburb, *faubourg* (m.).
succeed, *succéder, réussir, parvenir.*
such, *tel.*
suffer, *souffrir.*
sum, *somme* (f.).
summer, *été* (m.).
sun, *soleil* (m.).
Sunday, *dimanche* (m.).
supper, *souper* (m.); to take supper, *souper.*
surely, *assurément.*
surpass, *surpasser, passer, dépasser.*
surprise, *surprise* (f.), *étonnement* (m.); to surprise, *étonner;* to be surprised, *s'étonner.*
surround, *entourer, environner.*
survive, *survivre.*
sustain, *soutenir.*
swallow, *hirondelle* (f.).
Swede, Swedish, *suédois.*
sweet, *doux.*
swim, *nager.*

T.

tailor, *tailleur* (m.).
take, *prendre;* take a walk, *se promener.*
tale, *conte* (m.).
talk, *parler, bavarder.*
talker, *parleur* (m.).
tall, *grand.*
tea, *thé* (m.).
tear, *larme* (f.)
tear, *déchirer.*

temptation, *tentation* (f.).
ten, *dix;* tenth, *dixième.*
tender, *tendre, doux.*
term, *terme* (m.).
terrorize, *terroriser, épouvanter.*
than, *que.*
thanks, *merci, remercîment* (m.); I thank you, *je vous remercie.*
that (pron.), *ce, cet, cette, ces, ce . . . là,* etc., *celui, celà, celui-là, celle-là, qui, que, lequel,* etc.; that which, *ce que, ce qui;* that is it! *c'est cela!*
that (conj.), *que* (often omitted in English, but not in French).
thee, *te, toi.*
their, *leur, leurs;* theirs, *le leur,* etc.
them, *eux, elles, les;* to them, *à eux, à elles, leur;* themselves, *eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes.*
then, *alors, donc, puis, ensuite.*
there, *là, y;* from there, *de là, en;* there is, *voilà;* there is (a book on the table), *il y a* (*un livre sur la table*); there are, *il y a.*
therefore, *donc, c'est pourquoi.*
these, *ces, ceux-ci, celles-ci.*
they, *ils, elles, eux;* (indefin.), *on.*
thick, *épais.*
thief, *voleur* (m.).
thine, *le tien,* etc.
thing, *chose* (f.); everything, all things, *tout.*
think, *penser;* thinker, *penseur* (m.).
third, *tiers* (m.); *troisième* (adj.).
thirst, *soif* (f.).
thirteen, *treize.*
thirty, *trente.*
this, *ce, cet, cette, ce . . . ci,* etc., *ceci, celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci.*
those, *ces, ceux-là, celles-là.*
thou, *tu.*
thought, *pensée* (f.).
thousand, *mille.*
threaten, *menacer.*
three, *trois.*
throat, *gorge* (f.).
throne, *trône* (m.).
through, *par, à travers, au travers de.*
throw, *jeter.*
thumb, *pouce* (m.).
Thursday, *jeudi* (m.).
thus, *ainsi.*
thyself, *toi-même.*
ticket, *billet* (m.).
time, *temps* (m.), *fois* (f.); once, *une fois;* three times, *trois fois.*
tire, *fatiguer, lasser.*
title, *titre* (m.).
to, *à, pour, en;* to-day, *aujourd'hui.*
together, *ensemble.*
tomb, *tombeau* (m.).
to-morrow, *demain;* day after to-morrow, *après-demain.*
tongue, *langue* (f.).
too, *trop;* too much, *trop, trop de;* too many, *trop de.*
touch, *toucher.*
toward, *vers.*
tower, *tour* (f.).
township, *commune* (f.).
trade, *métier* (m.).
trail, *trace* (f.).
translation, *traduction* (f.).
travel, *voyage* (m.); to travel, *voyager.*
traveler, *voyageur* (m.).
tree, *arbre* (m.).
triumph, *triomphe* (m.); to triumph, *triompher.*
trout, *truite* (f.).
true, *vrai;* truly, *vraiment.*
trunk, *malle* (f.).
truth, *vérité* (f.).
try, *essayer;* (try to) *chercher à.*
Tuesday, *mardi* (m.).
turn, *tour* (m.).
twelve, *douze;* twelfth, *douzième.*
twenty, *vingt.*
two, *deux.*

U.

ugly, *laid.*
umbrella, *parapluie* (m.).
uncle, *oncle* (m.).
uncover, *découvrir.*
under, *sous;* underneath, *dessous, au-dessous.*
understand, *comprendre.*
uneasy, *inquiet.*
unforeseen, *imprévu.*
unknown, *inconnu.*
unless, *à moins que* (or — *de*).
until, *jusque, jusqu'à ce que.*

uphold, *soutenir.*
upon, *sur.*
upper, *supérieur.*
up to, *jusqu'à.*
us, *nous.*
utter (a cry), *pousser (un cri).*

V.

valley, *vallée* (f.).
vanquish, *vaincre.*
various, *différent.*
vegetable, *légume* (m.).
verse, *vers* (m.).
very, *très;* very much, *très, beaucoup* (not *très beaucoup*).
vest, *gilet* (m.).
view, *vue* (f.).
virtue, *vertu* (f.).
visitor, *visite* (f.), *visiteur* (m.).
voice, *voix* (f.).
voyage, *traversée* (f.).

W.

wait, *attendre;* wait on, *servir;* waiter, *garçon.*
wake, *veiller;* wake up, *s'éveiller, se réveiller.*
walk, *marcher.*
wall, *mur* (m.), *muraille* (f.).
walnut, *noix* (f.).
want, *vouloir.*
war, *guerre* (f.).
warm, *chaud;* to warm one's self, *se chauffer, se réchauffer.*
warn, *avertir.*
wash, *laver, se laver.*
watch, *montre* (f.); to watch, *veiller;* watchman, *veilleur de nuit.*
water, *eau* (f.); to water, *abreuver.*
wave, *flot* (m.), *vague* (f.).
way, *voie* (f.), *chemin* (m.); (= manner) *façon* (f.).
we, *nous.*
weak, *faible;* weaken, *faiblir.*
weapon, *arme* (f.).
wear, *porter.*
weather, *temps* (m.).
Wednesday, *mercredi* (m.).
week, *semaine* (f.).
weep, *pleurer.*
weigh, *peser.*
weight, *poids* (m.).
well, *bien;* well, well! *allons, allons!*
west, *ouest* (m.).
wet, *mouillé;* to wet, *mouiller;* to get wet, *se mouiller.*
what, *quel, quelle; quoi?; ce que, ce qui;* whatever, *quoi que, quelque . . . que,* etc.
wheat, *blé* (m.).
when, *quand, lorsque.*
where, *où.*
whether, *si;* whether . . . or, *soit . . . soit, soit que . . . soit que.*
which, *lequel; qui, que, quel.*
while, *pendant que.*
whistle (to) *siffler.*
white, *blanc.*
who, *qui, lequel;* whom, *qui, que, lequel.*
whoever, *qui que; quel que, quiconque.*
whole, *entier.*
whosoever, *qui que ce soit.*
why, *pourquoi.*
wife, *femme.*
will, *vouloir;* will, *volonté* (f.).
win, *gagner.*
wind, *vent* (m.).
wind, *remonter.*
wine, *vin* (m.).
wing, *aile* (f.).
winter, *hiver* (m.).
wise, *sage;* in no wise, *nullement;* likewise, *de même.*
wish, *vouloir;* wish, *désir, souhait* (m.).
wit, *esprit* (m.).
with, *avec;* within, *dedans;* without, *dehors, sans.*
witness, *témoin* (m.).
woman, *femme* (f.).
wonder, *merveille* (f.); to wonder, *s'émerveiller, s'étonner;* wonderfully, *merveilleusement.*
wood, *bois* (m.).
word, *mot* (m.); *parole* (f.).
work, *travail* (m.), *ouvrage* (m.), *œuvre* (f.); to work, *travailler.*
world, *monde* (m.).
worse, worst, *pire, le pire.*
write, *écrire.*
writer, *écrivain* (m.).

wrong, *tort* (m.); to be wrong, *avoir tort.*

Y.

yawn, *bâiller.*
year, *année* (f.), *an* (m.); leap year, *année bissextile;* happy new year! *bonne année!* new year's day, *jour de l'an;* new year, *nouvel an.*
yellow, *jaune.*
yes, *oui, si.*
yesterday, *hier;* day before yesterday, *avant hier.*
yoke, *joug* (m.).
yonder, *là-bas.*
you, *vous, tu.*
young, *jeune;* young man, *jeune homme.*
your, *votre, vos, ton, ta, tes.*
yours, *le vôtre,* etc.; *le tien,* etc.
yourself, *vous-même, toi-même;* yourselves, *vous-mêmes.*

INDEX.

Numbers refer to sections.

conj. = conjugation, or conjugated; prep. = preposition; pron. = pronunciation.

A, pron., 2; prep., 12, 418, 419–421.
accent, 10; French accents, 117.
address of letter, 294.
adjectives: agreement, 16; formation of feminine, 17, 328–335; in **eux**, 210; plural, 35, 340; place, 336–340; comparison, 84 ff., 335; qualifying, 326–341; demonstrative, 27–30; possessive, 44, 136–138; determinative, 341–352; interrogative, 342; indefinite, 348–352; numeral, see **cardinal** and **ordinal**.
adverbs, 426–431; of quantity, 99, 426; of time, place, etc., 426; comparison, 429–431.
alphabet, 1; pronunciation, 2–10.
article: definite, 12 ff.; before names of countries, 38 (note), 307; used for possessive adjectives, 45, 309; other uses and omissions, 304–313; agreement, 313, 314; indefinite, 43.
avoir: present tenses, 33; imperfect and past definite, 49–53; conditional, 127; verbs conj. with, 155–159.

C, pron., 6.
cardinal numerals, 98, 151.
ch, pron., 6.
CHATEAUBRIAND, 154.
comparison of adjectives, 84 ff., 335; of adverbs, 429–431.
compound nouns, 321–324.
concessive use of subjunctive, 260.
conditional mood: inflection, 126; uses, 221, 403.
conjugations: see **verbs**.
conjunctions, 431–438; of coördination, 431, 432, 437; of subordination, 434–437.
consonants, pron., 6–8; final, 7–9.
CORNEILLE, 121.

Dans, prep., 418, 422 ff.
days of week, names, 174.
de, prep., 12, 421.
definite article: see **article**.
demonstratives: see **adjectives** and **pronouns**.
diphthongs, 3.
DUMAS (ALEXANDRE), 135.

E, pron., 1, 2.
elision, 12, 353 (*g*).
-emment, adverbial ending, 428 (*c*).
en, prep., 418, 422 ff.; with present participle, 278, 391.
en, adverbial pronoun, 101, 122.
endings (letter), 298.
être, present tense, 18; imperfect and past definite, 49–53; future, 113; conditional, 127; subjunctive, 242; verbs conj. with, 178 ff.

Feminine of adjectives, 17, 328–335; of nouns, 11, 316–320.
future tense: inflection, 111–114; uses, 400–403.

G, pron., 6.
gender of nouns, 11, 316–320.
gn, pron., 6.

H, pron., 6.
headings (letter), 295.
HUGO (VICTOR), 61.

I, pron., 1, 2.
imperative, 69.
imperfect: endings, 50; meaning, 52; uses, 393–395.
indefinite: pronouns, 39, 376–384; adjectives, 348–352; article, 43.
indicative: meaning, 243, 392; see also **verbs**, and various **tenses**.
infinitive: endings, 62; uses, 384–392; without prep., 385; with *de*, 386; with *à*, 387–389; with other prep., 389–391; instead of subjunctive, 263, 386 (*c*).
interjections, 438 ff.
interrogation, 20, 105.
irregular verbs, 300 ff.

L, pron., 6.
LA FONTAINE, 103.
LAMARTINE, 61.
letters: address, heading, beginning, ending, 294–298; notes, 298.
liaison, 8.

Moods of verbs: see **verbs**.
MUSSET (ALFRED DE), 81.

Nasal vowels, 4–6.
negation, 24.
notes, 298.
noun: gender, 11, 316–320; plural, 35, 320; plural of nouns in *al*, 94; compound, 321–324; foreign, 324; proper, 306, 325.
numerals: see **cardinal** and **ordinal** numerals.

O, pron., 1, 2.
object pronouns, 106 ff.
on, indefinite pronoun, 39, 381–384.
ordinal numerals, 174, 344–346.

Participles: see **present** and **past participles**.
partitive article, 34.
passive voice of verbs, 203 ff.
past definite: of *être* and *avoir*, 51; of other verbs, 142–144; meaning, 52; uses, 395–398.
past indefinite: inflection, 158, 180; uses, 398.
past participle: how formed, 157; conj. with *avoir*, 170; conj. with *être*, 170, 181, 410; of intransitive verbs, 411; other rules of agreement, 412–418.
past perfect: uses, 399.
pluperfect: uses, 399.
plural of nouns and adjectives, 35; see also **nouns** and **adjectives**.
prepositions, 418 ff.; before infinitive, 389–391; *en* with present participle, 278.
present participle: ending, 63; compared with verbal forms in *ant*, 407–409; use with *en*, 278.
pronouns: personal, 104 ff., 353–357; possessive, 138–141; demonstrative, 30, 358–362; indefinite, 39, 376–384; relative, 362–372; interrogative, 372–376.
pronunciation of vowels and consonants, 2 ff.
proper names, 38 (note), 306, 325.

R, pron., 6.
reflexive verbs, 189 ff.
relative pronouns, 362–372.

S, pron., 6.
SÉVIGNÉ (MME. DE), 177.
some: how translated, 34.
subject-pronouns: place of, 105.
subjunctive mood: inflection, 234 ff.; meaning, 243; after verbs or expressions of sentiment, 244, 245; after verbs or expressions of fear, 245 (note); after verbs of will or command, 250 (*a*); after impersonal verbs and expressions, 250 (*b*); after negative clauses, 252 (*a*); after superlatives, 252 (*b*); after phrases of concession, condition, doubt, fear, etc., 260; replaced by infinitive, 263, 386 (*c*); use of tenses, 261, 405–407.
superlative degree of comparison: see **comparison**.
syllables: division of words into, 9.

T, pron., 6.
tenses : sequence, 261, 405–407 ; for use of tenses, see various **tenses.**
time of day, 164.

U, pron., 2.
un, pron., 5 ; indef. article, 43 ; num. adj., 98.

Verbs: conjugation, 62–67 ; in *-eler*, *-eter*, 73, 272 (*a*) ; in *-yer*, 148, 272 (*f*) ; in *-cer*, *-ger*, 272 ; with *e* and *é* in the penult, 146–148, 272 (*d*, *e*) ; imperative, 69 ; future, 111–114 ; conditional, 124 ; see also **conditional** ; remarks on verbs of conj. I. and II., 272 ff. ; of conj. III. and IV., 281 ff. ; irregular (tables of), 300 ff. ; compound tenses with *avoir*, 155 ff. ; with *être*, 178 ff. ; reflexive, 189 ff. ; passive voice, 203 ff. ; after conditional *si*, 218 ff. For use of tenses, see various moods and tenses.
vowels : pron., 2–6 ; simple, 2 ; diphthongs, 3 ; nasal, 4–6.
VOLTAIRE, 188.

X, pron., 6.

Y, adverbial pronoun, 76, 78.

APR 19 1899

FEB 1 1 1918

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 117 337 1